



XEROX MICROFORMS SYSTEMS
University Microfilms

Ann Arbor, Michigan 48106

(313) 761-4700



MICROFILMED—1974

Herodian of Alexandria
H I S
H I S T O R Y
O F T W E N T Y R O M A N
CÆSARS and EMPERORS
(of his Time.)

RELATING
I The strange Coniunctures and Acci-
dents of State, that hapned in *Europe, Asia,*
and *Afrike*, in the Reuolution of
Seuenty Yeeres.

Interlaced
With Speeches, Antiquities, Court-passages,
Prodigies, Embassies, Sieges, Surprizes,
Battells, Conquests, and Triumphs.

Wherein is also declared
The most Solemne Deification of the Roman
Emperours and Empresses.

A N D
The Martiall Honor and Heroicke Valor
[of the ancient Southerne and Northerne
B R I T A N S.

Interpreted out of the Greeke Originall.

L O N D O N,
Printed for Hugh Perry at the Harrow in
Britaine's Burse 1629.

To the most August,

most Sacred, and Victorious

HEROINA,

Mother to innumerable braue Monarchs, Princes, Peeres, and Chieffs;

DIVA BRITANNIA:

Empresse of all Ilands;

Queene of France and Ireland,

Princessse of * Palestine, Virginia, Guiana, * Cyprus, New-England, &c.

Soueraigne of the 200. Iles of the Hebrides, Orcades, &c.

Lady of the OCEAN;

Regent of the ATLANTIKE EMPIRE:

I consecrate this

IMPERIAL,

Impartial, and Incomparable

History of that Graue Senator,
and Noble Statist,

HERODIAN.
1155939

x881
H35, Em

* Rich. 1. purchased it of Gnythe last K. of Ierusalem. Rich. 1. conquered it in his returne from Palestine. It contained anciently nine Kingdomes. Vid. Cluverij Introduct. Geograph. li. 5. c. 26.



THE
APPROBATION
of this History, by diuers Au-
thors of Eminent Place
and Esteeme.

PHOTIUS the Patriarke, in the 99. Chapter of
his Greeke Bibliotheke.

HERODIAN neither swells with Sur-
perfluity, nor omits ought that is Neces-
sary: in a word, he is not inferiour to any,
* for all Historicall Perfections.

HENRY STEPHAN in his Latine Dedicatory Epistle
to SIR PHILIP SIDNEY (of Glorious Memory).
prefixt before HERODIANs Greeke
History.

THe reading of Herodians Historicall
Worke, will be a matter of singular Pro-
fit and Pleasure to the * Courtiers of this Age;
for he represents (as in a Glasse) the Empe-
rours of that Age, and their Courts; with their
Comedies,

* Et mirus
vultus
herodiani

* Nostri tempo-
ris Antich.

The Approbation.

Comedies, Tragedies, and Tragicomedies. It is most certaine, that he was both an Eye-witnesse, and an Earre-witnesse of many things which he writ. No Romane History did euer comprise such * wonderfull Changes hapning in the Romane Empire, in so small a Circle of Time.

* Tam mirabiles vicissitudines

POLITIAN in his Epistle to Pope INNOCENT the 8.

HAving bethought my selfe which of all the Greeke Historians I should translate (according to your H. Command) I resolved at last on HERODIAN that * Excellent Writer, who hauing long continued in the Emperours Court, and being very aged, undertooke to write the History of his Time: which he hath performed, not only eloquently, but withall most frankly and faithfully. Your Holinesse shall finde in him great Varietie of Persons and Actions, many strange things, and frequent Examples of Fortune, * reeling (as it were) sometime one way, sometime another: as also wonderfull wise Counsels, accompanied with unexpected Events; and sage

* Excellent rerum scriptor, & qui diu in Palatina versatus, Aulæ affectu iam atata, Historiam de suis temporibus componere aggressus &c.

* Vacillanti.

The Approbation.

sage Precepts, deliuered in a Stile full of Majesty and Sweetnesse: lastly, a very Magazine of Morallitie; and (as it were) a Mirrour of Humane Fate: whence all men may select choice Documents conducing to the Weale and Advancement of a priuate and publike Estate.

M.D.W HBAR, the Publike Professor of History in the most Noble Vniuersitie of * Oxford, in his Booke, De Ratione & Metodo legendi Historias, pag. 35.

* Quam semper amatam, Semper honoratam (sic) D I voluisse habere.

HERODIAN, a most polite and iudicious Author, hath with singular Eloquence described the Aets and Liues of many Cæsars and Emperours.



THE NAMES OF

the Roman *Cæsars* and * Empe-
rours, whose Acts and Liues are
recorded by *Herod'ian*.

An. Dom

163 * MARCVS AVRELIVS } The two first Consorts in the
ANTONINVS, } Roman Empire.
L. VERVS, his Sonne in Law,

182 * COMMODVS.

195 * PERTINAX.

195 IVLIAN.

NIGER, }
196 * SEVERVS, } in { *Asia,* }
ALBINVS, } { *Italy,* } at once.
} { *Britany,* }

ANTONINVS, } Brothers and Colleagues.
GETA, }

219 MACRINVS, and
DIADVMENIANVS Cæsar, (his Sonne.)

220 ANTONINVS, or rather *Pseud-Antoninus*.

224 ALEXANDER.

MAXIMINVS.
QVARTINVS.

237 GORDIAN the Father.
GORDIAN his Sonne.

MAXIMVS, } Colleagues.
239 * ALBINVS, }

241 GORDIAN, Nephew to the elder GORDIAN.

* Their Gold, Silver
and Copper Coyne
(with their Image
and Inscriptions) at
in the custody of
that noble Antiquary
Sir R. C.

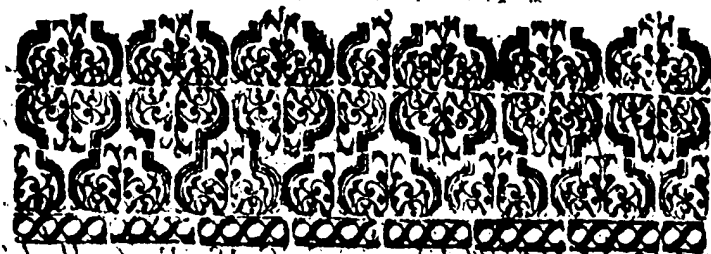
* There is yet extant
at Rome a stately Co-
lumne erected by
him. In his time *Se-
verus* received the
Christian Faith. *See*
Eccl. Hist. lib. 1.

* His naked Statue
(as he plaid the *Gla-
diator*) is extant at
Rome in the *Forum*
Palace. See the
Triumphant of *St. M.
G. Sandys* Jour-
nal, p. 271.

* So called because
(at first) he pertinaciously refused to ac-
cept the Empire offer-
red him by the Se-
nate. *Xiphilins*.

* His *Triumphal*
Arch is yet extant at
Rome. No marble is
3. stood for the Em-
pire; for (once) there
were 30 Princes e-
lected at one time;
several Attendants.

* *Severus* was one of the
Vid Bod de rep. lib. 1.
& *P. M. Max. ad O-*
bium: (*See in*
Siculus & Cap-
Albinus.)



The principall Contents of

HERODIANS

EIGHT BOOKES OF

His

IMPERIALL
HISTORY.

HERODIANS *Historicall*
Faith, The rare and
choice Occurrents here
recorded. A briefe Cha-
racter of the Emperours ensuing. A
Summary of the Emperour Marcus
his Life and Reigne. The Education
of

The Contents.

of Prince Commodus. How Mar-
cus bestowed his Daughters. His
Princely Qualities. Herodian a
great Statesman. Marcus misdoubts
Commodus. His Speech on his
Death-bed. He dies and is generally
lamented. Commodus succeeds.
His Speech to the Armie. His bad
Courtiers. Pompeianus a grave
Counsellor. Roman Triumphs. Com-
modus posteth in Rome. The Ro-
mans dearly affect him. His De-
scription. His Entry into Rome. Pe-
rennius a Favourite. Lucilla,
Commodus his Sister, conspires a-
gainst him. Perennius his Treason.
Jupiters Festivall. Romane Priests
honoured. Perennius discovered and
beheaded. Maternus rebels: his
Plot detected. The Mother of the
Gods:

The Contents.

Gods: her Holiday, and History.
The strange River that made men
geld themselves. A Plague and Fa-
mine at Rome. Cleander a Favo-
rite. His Treason. He is generally
bated. He armes the Souldiers against
the Commons. Fadilla detects him.
He is beheaded. Commodus his
Cruelty and Credulity. Strange Pro-
digies. Rome fired. Commodus
debauched and infatuated. Liberty
a Goddesse. Commodus, an ex-
cellent Archer. He fights naked with
Fencers before all the People. A em-
perers gifts. A new-recreas ride sa-
temnly kept. Marcia, Commodus
his chiefe Concubine. Philo Com-
modus, Marcia, and others conspire
Commodus Death. He is poisoned
and strangled. The

* This is none of
Herodians Relati-
ons, but a margi-
nall Annotation
taken out of
Alex. ab Alex.
&c. and inserted
in illustration of
that Digression of
Herodian about
the Mother of
the Gods.

The Contents.

The principall Contents of the SECOND BOOKE.

PERTINAX his Description. His Magnanimitie. His worthy Esteeme. Lætus his Speech to the Armie. Pertinax proclaimed Emperour, and confirmed by the Senate. His Speech to the Senators. His rare Government. Embassies congratulatory. Pertinax a Father to the Commons. Informers punished. Pertinax his Loue to Learning. The Prætorians mutine. His Speech to them. He is murdered, and extremely lamented. Prætorians make Port-sale of the Empire. Iulian buyes it. The Commons curse him. He is debauched. Niger commended. His Politie to get the Empire. Stage-plays and

The Contents.

and Reuels. Nigers Speech. He is elected Emperour, and visited by Embassadors. His Securitie and Error. Seuerus described. His strange Dreame. His deepe Politie. He is elected Emperour. His Speech. His Expedition to Rome. Italy surprized. Iulian amazed. Elephants trained. Seuerus his Stratagem. Iulian deserted, and slaine. Seuerus takes the Prætorians by a Train. His Speech to them. They are degraded. He enters Rome. He courts the Commons and Nobles. His warlike Preparation against Niger. He fears the Britans. Their Elogie. Albinus their Governour. He is declared Cæsar by Seuerus. Herodian writes a History of these reeres.

The

The Contents.

The principall Contents of the
THIRD BOOKE.

Niger prepares for Warre. He fortifies Mount Taurus, and Byzantium. Æmilianus his Generall, defeated. Seuerus Politie. He assaults Mount Taurus. Moores described. Alexandria. Battell betwix Seuerus and Niger. Niger beheaded. Seuerus Plots against Albinus. His Speech against him. His strange Winter-march. Albinus sailes out of Brittain, and fights with Seuerus. The Britans fight brauely, and beat Seuerus off his horse. They win the first Battell. They disranke, and are routed. Albinus beheaded. Seuerus his Glorious Elogy. He makes two Vicegerents

The Contents.

gerents in Britaine. His Crueltie and Couetousnesse. Secular Games euery 300 yeere. Seuerus his second Expedition into the East. He besieges Atræ, and is repulsed. His strange Fortune. He surprizes the Parthian King. He enters Rome in Triumph. His Sonnes Dissentions. Plautian a Mighty Fauourite. His Treason, strangely detected. He is cut in peeces. Seuerus instructs his Sons. News from Britaine. Seuerus his Expedition thither. Description and Elogie of the Picts or Scots. Seuerus dies for grieve. Antonines Crueltie. Seuerus Reliques. Antonine and Geta saile out of Britaine.

The

The Contents.

The principall Contents of the FOURTH BOOKE.

THE two Emperours enter Rome in State. What Roman Emperours Deified. Their solemne Obsequie and Funerall Triumph. Seuerus Deified. Wrestling. The Partition of the Empire. The Empresse Dowager hinders it. Antonine kills Geta. His Prodigalitie and sauage Crueltie. His guilty Conscience. His Exercises and Military Austeritie. Hee acts Alexander and Achilles. Hee is Royally entertained at Alexandria. Hee offers at Alexanders Shrine. His Quarrell to the Alexandrians. A fearfull Massacre. He pretends to be a Suitor to the King of Parthiaes

The Contents.

aes daughter, vnder which colour, he massacres the Parthians. Hee consults with Magicians, and commands them to coniure. He is slaine. Macrinus succeeds. His Speech. Aterrible Battell betwixt the Romans and Parthians. Heralds make a sudden League betwixt them.

The principall Contents of the FIFTH BOOKE.

MAcrinus his Letter to the Roman Senate and People. The Senate confirme his Election. Informers punished. Macrinus his Errour. Mæsa, a Politicke Lady. Temple of the Sunne. His Image and Priest. Bassian made Emperour, and called Antonine. Iulian beheaded. Battell betwixt Macrine & Antonine.

The Contents.

Macrine flies, and is beheaded. Diadumenianus Cæsar. Antonines Devotion at Nicomedia. He sends his Picture to Rome. His Acts at Rome. He dances about the Altars. His Cruelty and Luxury. He writes to the Senate to excuse his ravishing of a Nun. He marries his God to Minerua, and after divorces them. He marries the Sunne and Moone together. Hee intbrones his God in a new Temple. His strange Donatives. Alexander, made Cæsar. Wrestling a Princely Exercise. Stage-players highly preferred. Antonine slaine.

The

The Contents.

The principall Contents of the
SIXTH BOOKE.

Alexander Emperour. The Religion and State reformed. Mæsa Deified. Alexanders Elogie: His Mariage. Persians invade the Romans. Alexander writes to the Persian; who scornes his Letters. Generall Muster in Italy. Alexander marches against the Parthian. An Embassie. Another brauing Embassie. Embassadors punisht. Alexanders policie. Archery. Armenian Mountaines. The Romans defeated. Alexander retires. Best Physicke for Souldiers. Germany rebels. Alexander comes to the Rhine. Archers. Heralds. Maximine described and elected Emperour. Alexander slaine.

The

The Contents.

The principall Contents of the SEVENTH BOOKE.

Magnus. Quartinus made
Emperour against his will.
Macedon a base Traitor. Germans
good Swimmers and Souldiers. A
terrible Battell in a Poole, betwixt
Romanes and Germanes. Informers
and Catchpoles fomented by Maxi-
mine. His Couetousnesse, Crueltie,
and Sacrilege. The Romanes Deuo-
tion. Afrike reuolts. A speech to
Gordian; elected Emperour. Vitali-
an slaine. Insurrection at Rome. Sa-
binus slaine. Maximines Flies and
Spies. His Speech to the Army. His
Expedition to Italy. Capellian de-
feats the Carthagenians. Prince
Gordian elected and slaine. The
Emperour.

The Contents.

Emperour Gordian strangles him-
selfe. The Romans solemne Parlia-
ment in Ioues Temple. Maximus
and Albinus elected Emperours by
the Senate, and relected by the Com-
mons. The Commons deluded. Gor-
dian Cæsar. Souldiers slaine. A
Commotion at Rome. Fencers slain.
A Councell of Warre. A Generall
Pardon. A Stratagem. Rome fired.

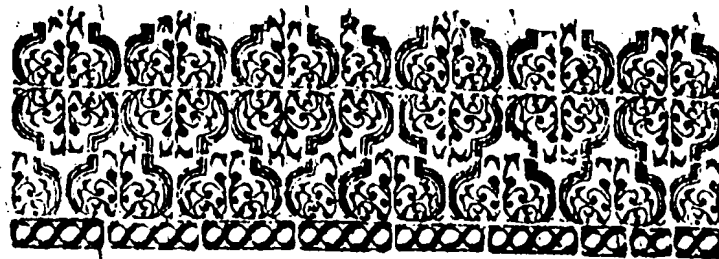
The principall Contents of the EIGHTH BOOKE.

Scouts. Maximines Army, how
marshalled. Ema. Alpes de-
scribed. Aquileia described. Cri-
spinus and Meniphilus. Maxi-
mines Message to the Aquileians.
Crispinus his Speech to the Aqi-
leians. The God Bel. Aquileia
assaulted.

The Contents.

*assaulted and brauely defended. The
Romans Policie. Maximine slain.
A Iubilee at Rome, for his Death.
A Triumphant Embassie. Maximus
and Albinus Dissention. They are
stript, beaten, and murthered by the
Prætorian Souldiers. Gordian Cæ-
sar Emperour.*

HERO.



HERODIAN.

His

IMPERIAL L HISTORY.

THE FIRST BOOKE.

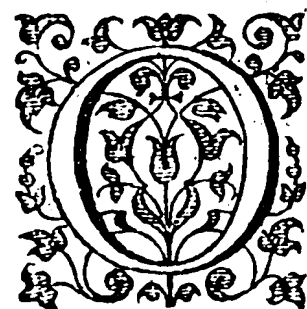
The Contents.

Herodians *Historicall Faith.*
The rare and choice Occur-
rents here recorded. A brieft Cha-
racter of the Emperours ensuing. A
Summary of the Emperour Marcus
his Life and Reigne. The Education
of Prince Commodus. How

A Marcus

Marcus bestowed his Daughters. His Princely Qualities. Herodian a great Statesman. Marcus misdoubts Commodus. His Speech on his Death-bed. He dies and is generally lamented. Commodus succeeds. His Speech to the Army. His bad Courtiers. Pompeianus a graue Counsellor. Romane Triumphs. Commodus posteth to Rome. The Romans dearly affect him. His Description. His Entry into Rome. Perennius a Favourite. Lucilla, Commodus his Sister, conspires against him. Perennius his Treason. Iupiters Festiuall. Roman Priests honoured. Perennius discovered and beheaded. Maternus rebels: his Plot detected. The Mother of the Gods; her Holiday; and History.

History. The strange Riuer that made men geld themselves. A Plague and Famine at Rome. Cleander a Favourite. His Treason. He is generally hated. He armes the Souldiers against the Commons. Fadilla detects him. He is beheaded. Commodus his Cruelty and Credulity. Strange Prodigies. Rome fired. Commodus debauched and infatuated. Liberty, a Goddesse. Commodus, an excellent Archer. He fights naked with Fencers before all the People. New-yeeres-gifts. New-yeeres-tide solemnely kept. Marcia, Commodus his chiefe Concubine. Philo-Commodus. Marcia and others conspire Commodus Death. He is poisoned and strangled.

HERODIANS *Induction.*

OF those which haue hitherto bestowed their paines in compiling History, and recording the Acts of ancient Time, diuers affecting the reputation of Learning, and coueting by well-tuned Language to eternize their Fame, (lest by Silence they should be lost among the Vulgar) haue beene more carefull to gild and embosse their Discourse, than to mine and search out the Truth: supposing (belike) though they deliuered many fabulous Narrations of things done so long since, they could not easily be controlled; and yet neuerthelesse, their neat and spruce Compositions should bee highly applauded.

Others againe, transported with spleene against some particular People, or with hatred against Tyrants; or else too much addicted to glorifie Princes, Cities, and priuate

Truth, the
Soule of Hi-
story.

Passionate Hi-
storians cen-
sured.

Imperiall History.

priuate persons, haue not perfectly delineated the Image of Truth.

For my owne part, I haue here vnder-taken to write such a History as is not grounded on vulgar Aires, and vaine Noises, or on the vncertaine Credit of forreine Relations; but of such recent Occurrences as I haue * faithfully and industriously collected, and cannot be vnkowne to the moderne Readers: and I doubt not but the Intelligence of so many rare and memorable Accidents, which haue fallen out in so short a time, will be both vsfull and delightfull to After-ages. For if wee reckon from *Augustus*, who reduced the State of the Romane Common-wealth to a Monarchy, wee shall not finde in all those two hundred yeeres (fortherabouts it is to *Marcus* the Emperours Reigne) either such change-full Successions in the Empire, or such various chances and euent of Ciuill and Forreine Warres, or so many Cities of our owne and of the Barbarians conquered: beside Earth-quakes and Pestilences, and the Liues of Princes

*Herodians Hi-
storically Faith.*

* *μετὰ πίστιν
ἀκρι-
βως.*

The rare and
choice Occur-
rents here re-
corded.

and Tyrants so strange and vncouth, that all the Records of Antiquitie can hardly parallel : some whereof enioyed their Principalitie for a longer time, others but a very small while ; yea many of them hauing scarce accepted the Imperiall Title, the very same day they were elected, were likewise reiected, and deposed from their Imperialitie. Whereupon, the City of Rome hauing in 60 yeeres more Emperours than for the proportion of the time, there hapned many variable and admirable Occurrents : for those Princes which were of riper yeeres, and could manage their Affaires with Wisdom and Iudgement, did gouerne themselves and their People with great honour ; but the younger sort of them, for want of Education and Experience, ran many wilde courses. Thus disparitie of Yceres and Conditions, was accompanied with diuersitie of Manners and Actions. The particulars whereof, exactly obseruing the Concurrance of the seuerall Times and Princes, wee come now to specifye.

A briefe Character of the Emperours ensuing.

A

A Summary of MARCVS his Life and Reigne.

THE Emperour **Marcus* had many * *Aurelius*. daughters, and but two sonnes ; whereof the younger (called *Verissimus*) died in his childhood : The other (named *Commodus*) hee was very sollicitous to bring vp well : to which purpose, he sent farre and neere for many noble Philosophers, giuing them great Pensions, to traine him vp in Vertue and Learning. His Daughters as soone as they were marriageable, he bestowed on the best men he could finde, among the Senators : For in the choice of his Sonne-in-lawes, he had not so much respect to ancient Nobilitie or great Wealth, as to their Excellence in all Morall & Intellectuall Endowments : rightly esteeming the Goods of the Minde to be the only permanent and durable Riches. He was endued with all Princely Vertues, and of such rare and exquisite knowledge in Antiquities, that he was not inferior

The education of Prince *Commodus*.

* *B*.

The Emperors prudent choice of his Sons in Law.

His Princely Qualities.

inferiour to any of the Greekes or Romans in that kinde: Witnesse his many wise Speeches and Writings yet extant. He was also a Prince of so sweet a temper, and debonaire behauiour towards all men, that he would giue * his hand to euery one that came to him, commanding his Guard to put backe none that came to see him. In a word, hee was the onely Emperour that shewed himselfe a Wise Man, not only in Words or Edicts, but in Grauitie and Continencie of life. Whereby it came to passe, that many famous men for Wisdome and Learning flourisht in his time. For men are very apt to imitate their Princes, for the most part. Now whatsoever he did in Peace or Warre remarkable, or attempted against the Northerne or Easterne Barbarians, is already committed to Writing by many excellent learned men. But those Occurrents, which all my time (after *Marcus* decease) I either saw or heard of, (most of which I knew experimentally, in regard I bore diuers * high and honourable Offices in the State) it is now my Taske to relate.

Marcus

* *ἡγεμὼν*.

* *ὁ βασιλικὸς ἡγεμὼν*.
Herodian, an Officer of State.

Marcus being now weakned with Age; and worne out and spent with incessant Toile, and Care; suddenly fell (while he was in * *Pannonia*,) into a grieuous discale. When he saw himselfe past recouery, hee was sore afraid, lest his sonne, who was then but * young, should in the first heat of Youth, through his vncontrollable Imperiall Power (when he was gone) abandon good Arts and Exercises, and betake himselfe to Drunkenesse and Intemperance: for Youth is too forward to shake " off the yoke of Discipline, and deuote it " selfe to the bewitching Blandishments of " sensuall * Delights. Being also a man of * high Wisdome, & profound Iudgement, he was much terrified at the remembrance of many Princes, which came to their Soueraignty when they were young & youthful; as, of *Dionysius* the Sicilian Tyrant, who was such an Epicure in his Diet & manner of liuing, that he richly rewarded them that could inuent any new kinde of Pleasure: as also of *Alexanders* Successors, which were so exorbitant and irregular in their

* Now *Austria* and *Hungary*.
Marcus misdoubts his son *Commodus*.

* About 18.

* *Seneca* calls Sensuality the Soueraigne good of Beasts. Ep. 93.
* *πολυσοφία*.

B

Gouern-

Gouernment, that they were a great Blemish and Dishonour to the Empire. For * *Ptolemy* so shamefully exceeded the bounds of modesty, that contrary to the Lawes of the *Macedons*, and all the *Greekes*, he made loue to his owne sister. And *Antigonus*, who would needs personate *Bacchus*; in stead of the *Macedonian* Coronet and Diadem, did vsually weare a Wreath of Iuy, and carry a * Speare, drest with green Boughes, in stead of a Scepter. The good Emperour was also much troubled with the late Examples of * *Nero*, who slew his owne Mother, and made himselfe the scotte of the Vulgar; and of *Domitian*, who was a most horrible cruell Monster. Reuoluing therefore in his minde, these Images of Tyranny, hee was grieuously tossed twixt Hope and Feare. Moreouer, he much distrusted the bordering *Germane* Nation, which (yet) he had not wholly at his Deuotion, but partly had Confederated, partly Conquered: Whereof many (notwithstanding) had withdrawne themselves from his Obedience, and were only

* See *Iustin.*
Lib. 24.

* *Thyrsus.*

* In him the
Casarean Line
failed.

only held in Awe, with the presence of the Prince. He was therefore in great doubt, lest despising his sonnes Minority, they would presently fall to Rebellion; it being the vsuall guise of Barbarians, to raise Tumults vpon the least Occasion. In these perplexities, he commands his Kinsmen and principall Lords that were there, to come vnto him; who being assembled, he sets the young Prince before them; and lifting vp himselfe a little on his Couch, makes this Speech vnto them.

The Emperour MARCVS his
Speech on his Death-bed.

IT is no maruell, if you be mone and lament my present Case: for Men are led by Nature, to compassionate their Kinsmens Miseries: and those doleful things which we see before our eyes, doe most excite our commiseration. But betweene you and me there

* *Obiecti praesentia mouet compassionem.*

is a more speciall Bond: for knowing how dearly I haue loued and respected you, I may iustly challenge your Loue againe. And now is the fittest season for mee to iudge, whether I haue deservedly honoured you thus long, and taken all occasions to preferre you; and for you to shew your selues gratefull and mindfull of those Funblements. You see here my sonne (your Pupill) is now entring the Aprill of his Age; and withall, into such broken Seas, and surging Waues of Bu-
 finesse, that if he haue not good Pilots, he may soone, by mis-gouernment, steere a wrong course, and make shipwracke of his Fortunes. Be you therefore as so many Fathers vn-
 to him, by your graue Counsels and In-
 structions. For no Treasure in the
 " World

*Gouerners
character*

" World can assure a Prince, nor
 " the strongest Guard so well pre-
 " serue him, as the Good Will, and
 " Loue of his Subjects. The way to
 " reigne long and securely, is not to
 " purchase Feare by Crueltie, but to
 " win Loue by Mildnesse and Cle-
 " mencie. For they are the best ser-
 uants to their Soueraigne, and fur-
 thest from Ielousie and Flatterie, not
 which are compelled by necessitie, but
 which are gently led by their owne
 louing inclinations, nor will they euer
 stand out, in any thing he shall require
 of them, vntlesse they be vniustly and
 violently oppressed. And it is a point
 of great Difficultie, for a Prince,
 that may liue as licentious as he list,
 to moderate himselfe, and bridle his
 owne Appetite. Wherefore if you by
 your

*N. B.
good subjects.*

*peragit tran-
quilla potestas
Quod violentia
nequit.*

L.

· your prudent Admonitions shall plant
 · in him a care to liue well; and often
 · remember him of what he hath now
 · heard, you shall render him a worthy
 · Prince; both to your selues, and others;
 · and you shall (thereby) propagate my
 · Memory; which this onely way you
 · may make immortall.

No sooner had MARCVS ended his Speech, but he swooned, and became speechlesse; being so sicke and heart-sunke, that he fell backe into his bed. Which lamentable sight, so moued all there present, that many of them cried out, as they were distracted. But he liued only a day and a night longer, and then* deceased: leauing to the present Age, an infinite loue to his Maiestie, and to the future, an euerlasting Memoriall of his Vertue. As soone as his death was made knowne, it is incredible what weeping and wailing there was in the Army, & among all the Communal-

Marcus dies.
 * April. 17. An.
 Dom. 181.
 Ætat. 59.

And is gene-
 rally lamented.

tie:

tie: yea there was no Nation throughout the Roman Empire, but with many teares receiu'd the message, and deplor'd their incomparable losse in him: some calling him, their good Father; others their good Emperour: some their most valorous Commander; others their Vertuous and Temperate Prince. Nor indeed, were any of them deceiued in him. Some few daies after the Celebration of his Funerall, it was thought fit by the Lords, to present the young Prince to the Army, that he might speake to them, and (as the manner of new Emperours was) bestow a Largeesse of Mony vpon them, to presse them (as it were) to his Loue and Service. Proclamation therefore was presently made, that all the Army should assemble together. Which done, *Commodus* comes forth, and hauing sacrificed to the Gods, ascends a high Throne erected in the midst of the Campe; where, being accompanied with his Fathers Kinsmen and Counsellours, which were very many, and excellent learned men, he speaks to this effect.

Commodus succeeds.

COMMO-

COMMODVS his Speech to
the Army.

I Make no doubt, but both you and
I are alike sorrowfull for our late
Calamitie ; and that you are no lesse
griued than my selfe. In my Fa-
thers time, I neuer bore my selfe
among you as your Superiour : For
he loued vs all, as if wee had beene all
One ; and did more willingly call mee,
Fellow-Souldier, than Sonne : esteem-
ing this, to note a participation of
Nature ; that, of Valour : yea, when
I was an Infant, he would oft carry
mee in his armes, and deliuer mee in-
to your hands, recommending mee
(as it were) to your Tutelage and Fi-
delitie. I am in good hope therefore
of

of all your Loues, seeing the elder sort
of you may repute me for your Foster-
childe, and my equalls I may well
terme my Schoole-fellowes in Armes,
so dearly did my Father loue vs all,
as if wee had beene but One ; being
carefull to traine vs up in all kinde of
Vertuous Exercises. And now after
him, hath Fortune * made me your
Prince, not by Faction (as some of
my predecessors) nor by Vsurpation.
For I only was borne and bred in the
Court, and as soone as I came into the
World, was receiued not into a priuate
Cradle, but vested in Imperiall * Pur-
ple : so that at the same instant, the
Sunne saw me a Man and a Prince.
Which, if you duly consider, you will
loue me not as a Datue, but a Na-
tine Emperour. And now that my
C Father

* The Roman
Emperours
kept the Image
of Fortune in
their Cham-
bers, with
great Venera-
tion.

* Hinc Por-
phyrogeniti.

* 106/176.

Father is translated to Heaven, into the Society and * Consistory of the Gods; the Rule of the World, and Care of Humane Affaires, is deuolued vnto Vs: which, what powerfull Effects, or good Successes it may produce, rests wholly in you. For if you make a braue end of the Warre, and extend the Roman Empire to the Ocean, you shall purchase immortall honour, and crowne the Memory of our common Father; who (as you ought firmly to beleeue) both heares what wee say, and sees what we doe. How happy then are we, that shall haue such a Witnesse of our Worthye Acts. And whereas the Honourable Services which you performed hitherto, with such prosperous Successes, may be attributed to his Providence and Governance;

uernance; your magnanimous Achieuements vnder mee your Young Prince, will purchase you a peculiar Trophie, and most Noble Testimonie of Loyaltie and Valour. Thus shall you procure to my tender Age, a glorious Esteeme, by your valiant Exploits; and the Barbarians being curb'd in the beginning of our Reigne, shall for the present not dare to insult, in contempt of our Minoritie, and being terrified with their owne harmes, shall euer hereafter stand in awe of Vs.

Hauiing thus said, and assured the Souldiers by a Magnificent Donatiue of Mony, he returned to his Palace. For a short time, he was in all things directed by his Fathers Friends, who daily assisted him with their prudent Counsels, permitting him only to much Recreation, as was conducible to

his Health. But after a while, diuers of his

* Court, winding themselves into fauour, fought by all meanes possible to corrupt this hopefull young Prince. These fawning Parasites, placing their Felicity in Belly-cheere, * and Brutish Lusts, did estoones put him in minde of the Delices of Rome, sometime recounting to him what braue things were there to be seene and heard; otherwhile, extolling the great Plenty and Abundance of all things there. Further, they shewed how incommodious it was, to reside on the Banks of * Ister, which were both barren and vnfruitfull, and perpetually subiect to Cold and Raine. Will your Miesty (said they) still drinke such frozen and muddy waters; while others enioy the warme Bathes, coole Rivers, and dainty Aire of Italy? With these and the like sugred Allectiues, they inflam'd the young Emperour with the Loue of Pleasures. Whereupon calling his Counsell together, he told them, he had a great desire to see his Native Country: but being loth to shew the Reason of that sudden

den

* τῶν αὐτοῦ δούλων

† Bad Courtiers.

* In Ventrè & Ventrè.

* The greatest Riuer (after Nilus) in all the Roman Empire. c. A G. l. (c. Salust.)

den Resolution, he said he was afraid, lest some of the chiefe Nobles should seize the Imperiall Palace at Rome, which being a strong Castle, he might easily of the * traine-Bands and others, raise a great Army, and proclaime himselfe Emperour. They hearing him alleage these Vmbrages, in great feare & amazement lookt on the Earth, and knew not what to say: at last Pompeianus the most ancient of all, who might best speake, because of his Affinity, hauing married Commodus eldest sister, said.

* ἐπὶ λέκτων βασιλεῶν.

Pompeianus a graue Statesman.

POMPEIANVS his Speech.

MY deare Soueraigne, it is no maruell if you long to see your Coantry: for there is in all of vs a vehement desire to be at home; but yet we checke it notwithstanding; because the Businesse in hand, doth much more import vs. I hope domestick Contentments may with more security hereaf-

C 3

ter

* *Vbi Imperator,
bi Roma.*

ter be enioyed. As for *Rome, it is there, where the Emperour is. But if we abruptly breake off the Warre, it will be both dishonourable and dangerous : for so we shall animate the Barbarians, who may thinke that we dismarched for feare of them, rather than any other Respect. Now if your Imperiall Maiesty will proceed in your Conquests, and extend this North-part of your Empire vnto the Ocean, in what a glorious Triumph may you enter the City, with the chained and captiued Kings and Princes of the Barbarians *before you? For thus the Romans in ancient Hercicall times, attained so great Renowne. Feare not therefore any domesticke Vsurers : For the prime Senators are here with you, and all the Military Forces

*In the Roman Triumphs, the Captiues went before the Triumphant Chariot. Vide S. Ambros. Ser. 61. de Pentecoste.

Forces are here ready to defend you. Besides, here is all the Imperiall Treasure. Lastly, the Memory of your Father, hath confirmed to you, the eternall Love and Loyalty of all Estates.

This strong Disswasive of Pompeianus, did (for a while) somewhat abate the edge of the young Emperour, who reue- ring his words, and hauing nothing to reply with his Honour, dismiss the Lords, saying, hee would better consider of it. But his Courtiers still pressing him with continuall importunity, he aduiz'd no further with his Counsell, but instantly sent Letters to Rome, and commanded all to prepare for the Iourney, giuing order to certaine Troopes to guard the Banks of Ister, and keepe off the Barbarians Incursions. They hauing receiued their Charge, did toene subdue many of them; and others, by rewards they wonne vnto them: which they might easily doe: for the Bar-
barians

* π βδρλαον
φιλοληματον.

barians being naturally greedy of * Cash; and not caring what dangerous Adventures they vndertooke, liu'd altogether by spoiling and forraging; or by selling Peace at a deare rate: Which *Commodus* well knowing, and hauing a huge Masse of Treasure; to the end to leaue all things in security, gaue them whatsoeuer they demanded.

As soone as it was proclaimed through the Army, that they must all goe home, there was a mighty hurly-burly in the Campe, euery man desiring to quit the Enemies Country, and to taste the Delights of the City. And when it was certainly knowne at *Rome*, that the *Prince* would come, all the *Roman* People were raiust with Ioy, euery one conceiuing excellent hopes of their young Emperour, and firmly beleeuing he would tread in his Fathers steps.

Commodus posteth to *Rome*.

Hee presently tooke his Iourney with high speed, posting in youthfull Brauery in his Chariot through euery City, (as he passed) being Royally receiued, and entertained,

tained, with great Magnificence, and generall Applause: But when he drew neere to *Rome*, all the *Roman* Peeres and Commons (euerie one struiuing to be formost) went out to meet him with * Laurels in their hands, and all kinde of Flowers, (as the Season afforded) to welcome their Noble young *PRINCE*: whom (in truth) they loued most dearly and cordially; in regard he was borne and bred among them, being of the most Noble and Imperiall Bloud, from three Descents. For by his Father, he was descended from the most Honourable Senators: and his Mother *Faustina*, the Empresse, daughter to *Antoninus Pius*, and Neece (by the mothers-side) to the Emperour *Adrian*, deriued his Pedegree from *Traian* her Great Grand-father. Thus Nobly descended was *Commodus*, who was not onely * conspicuous for his youthfull Prime, but also for his louely Feature; being of a fine Constitution of Body, of an amiable and Maiestique Presence; bright and * sparkling Eyes, yellow and curled Lockes, in so much, that

* Δαφνηστεον.

The *Romans* dearly affect him.

* αἰοδίατος.

His description.

* πικνοδους.

D

when

when hee walked in the Sunne, his Haire would glister like Flames of Fire, which made many suppose it was powdred with Gold. Others conceited, it was a signe of some diuine Excellence, and that he had that glistering Lustre (on his head) from his Birth. Moreouer the silken downe of his Cheekes began to blossome, and bud forth like Roses in the Spring. This hopefull and Illustrious Emperour did the Romans congratulate with passing hearty & affectionate Acclamations, strowing all the way before him with Flowers and Garlands. Hauing made his Entry into the City, he went first to the Temple of *Iupiter*, and then to the Fanes of the other Gods: Lastly, hauing solemnly thanked the Senators and Pretorian souldiers, for their singular Fidelity, he repos'd himselfe in the *Imperiall Palace.

For some few yeares he gaue all due honour and regard to his Fathers Friends, being content to be ruled by them in all matters of Weight. But afterwards committing the Government of the Empire to others,

His entry into Rome.

* Built on Mount *Palatine*, otherwise called *Palatium*. See *Aurel. Vi. Clor. de Orig. Gent. Rom.*

others, he made *Perennius* an Italian (a good Souldier) Captaine of the Pretorian Bands: who suffering the young Emperour to follow his Pleasures, and wallow in all manner of sensuality, vnderooke all the Affaires of the Empire, and (in effect) ruled alone. The man was insatiably couetous, for being neuer content with what hee had, he still gaped for more. Yea, it was his daily practice to calumniat the ancient Counsellors of the Emperors Father, and to bring within compasse of Misprision, the most Wealthy and Noble Persons, that the young Prince being by false fears & fained surmises induced to put them to death, their Goods & Estates might be confiscate to his vse. Yet for awhile, was the Prince more temperable, out of Respect to his Fathers Memory, and his Counsellours Grauity: but by the malignity of Fortune, that good Temper and Disposition was soone altered and peruered. The occasion was this. *Lucilla Commodus* eldest sister was first wedded to *Lucius Verus*, whom *Marcus* had associat-

Perennius a Favourite.

Lucilla Commodus his sister.

ted in the Imperiall Government, having obliged him in the strongest Bond of Loue, by bestowing his daughter vpon him. After *Lucius* decease, she still retaining her former State and Dignity, was by her Father affianced to *Pompeianus*, and permitted by *Commodus* to enioy the same Honours. For as an Empresse she had her Chaire of State erected on the Theatre, and Fire likewise (after the vsuall manner) carried before her. But when *Commodus* had married *Crispina*, who then as the PRINCES wife, was to haue Precedence, *Lucilla* stormed at it, and interpreting the others Honour to bee her Disgrace, yet durst not impart her Designe (of surprizing the Empire) to her husband *Pompeianus*, because she knew he loued *Commodus* entirely; Howbeit, opening her minde to a Noble young Gallant, called *Quadratus*, with whom she was suspected to play the Adulteresse, she grievously complained to him of the indignity, and at last perswaded him to such a Course, as was pernicious to himselfe, and all the Senators. For

Crispina the
Empresse.

Lucilla and o-
thers conspire
against *Commo-*
dus.

among

among others of the Nobilitie which were of that Conspiracie, there was one *Quintianus* a bold and desperate youth, whom he inueigled, and suborned to watch some fit opportunity to kill *Commodus* with a * Stiletto (which he might hide in his Bosome) which done, Hee vndertooke to salue the matter with Money.

* *Stiletto*.

Shortly after, *Quintianus* standing in a blinde corner in the Entry to the Amphitheater, as *Commodus* passed by, offered to stab him; Proclaiming aloud that the Senate sent him that: which as soone as hee had spoken, intending to follow his Thrust, he was seized by the Guard, and receiued condigne punishment for his Madnesse: the Emperours safety being wrought by his owne discouery. This was the prime and maine Ground of the Princes Hatred against the Nobility. For his minde was so deeply wounded with those words, that he tooke them all for his Capitall Enemies, and could neuer forget the Speech of the youth which assailed him.

The Conspi-
racy detected.

Perennius laying hold of this Occasion, counsell'd

counselled him to root out all the chiefe Nobles and Gallants, whose Estates being confiscate and given him, he suddenly grew to infinite Wealth. For himsele sitting as Iudge, *Commodus* his owne sister, and all that had a hand in that Conspiracie, or were but lightly suspected for it, were put to death.

Thus *Perennius* hauing made away those whom the Emperour feared (which indeed did beare a Paternall Affection to him) tooke him into his owne tuition: And now being in the height of Authority, he cast about how to vsurpe the Empire: to which end he perswaded *Commodus*, that his sonnes (which were (yet) but youths) might be made Commanders of the Imperiall Forces in * *Illyria*. Whereupon he prouides a mighty masse of Treasure, to winne the good wills of the Pretorian souldiers. The sonnes also secretly leuiued great Numbers of souldiers, that as soone as their Father had slaine *Commodus*, they might inuade the Princedom.

This Treason was strangely detected in this manner.

The

The Conspirators executed.

Perennius his treason.

* After called *Dalmatia*, now *Sclauonia*.

The Romans vse to celebrate a sacred Agon or Pageant in honour of *Iupiter Capitolinus*, to which there is extraordinary Resort of People, as is vnuall at the Solemnities of that royall * City. Now it is the Custome for the Emperour also to be there present and President, together with the Priests, which yearly wait in their courses. The Emperour being set in his Throne to heare those famous Actors, and the Theatre full of spectators (which with singular decency * were seated according to their Degrees) before any thing was said or acted on the Stage, suddenly there starts out one, in a Philosophers habit, with a staffe in his hand, and a Scrip on his shoulder, (halfe naked) who running to the midst of the Stage, stood still; and beckening with his hand for silence, said; *This, O Commodus, is no time for Sports, Shewes, or Festiualls: Perennius his Sword hangs ouer your Head, and if you doe not speedily auoid the present Danger, you are vndone. That same Man there hath raised both Men and Money against you, and his Sonnes like-*

The Royall Festiuall of *Iupiter*.

* βασιλίδος πόλιν.

Honour of Roman Priests.

* κατὰ πόλιν ἐν κομμάτι.

Perennius discovered.

wife

wife sollicite the Illyrian Armie : whom if you doe not instantly preuent, you are a dead man

The fellow hauing thus said, whether moued thereto by some Diuine Instinct ; or to purchase himselfe a Name (being an obscure Plebeian) or because he hoped to attaine some great Reward of the Prince for his discouery, certainly *Commodus* was mightily astonisht. Others, though they beleued it might be true ; yet they seemed not to credit it. *Perennius* commands him to be apprehended, and as a seditious franticke, to be burned. Thus suffered he for his mis-timed Boldnesse. Howbeit, diuers that made semblance to regard the Emperours safety, and bore *Perennius* vpon the spleene, for his intolerable haughty and disdainfull Carriage, taking this Occasion, spared not to accuse him : in so much, that *Commodus* (therby) euaded the Mischiefe, & *Perennius* with his children smarted for it. Soone after there came * Souldiers vknowne to *Perennius* son, and brought Coines stamped with his Image, which they secretly shewed to *Commodus*, (vna-
wares

* They were Brittainish Souldiers (as our Writers say.)

wares to *Perennius* though he were Praefect :) and detected all the Treason : for which Seruice they were exceeding richly rewarded. Whereupon the next night the Emperour sent for *Perennius* his head, who little dreamt he was discouered. Hee sent also Posts to his sonne ; which by their speed preuented the Rumours of what was done at *Rome*, and deliuered to him very louing Letters from the Emperor, requiring him to hasten forthwith to *Rome*, for his extraordinary Aduancement. The messengers also told him it was his Fathers desire he should come ; but writ not himselfe, because he knew the Emperours Letters were sufficient. The young man vtterly ignorant of his Fathers Disaster, or of the plot against himselfe, beleued this to be true ; and though he were much troubled that his Designes were thus interrupted, yet relying on his Fathers Puissance, (whom he thought to be safe enough) he set forward on his Iourny, and as soone as he arriued in *Italy*, he was slaine by the Emperours appointment. This was the end of them.

*Perennius be-
headed.*

E

Then

Then *Commodus* made two Pretorian Præfects, supposing it not safe, to delegate so great Power to any One, which being diuided betwixt two, might be the weaker and lesse dangerous. But ere long another Treason broke out against him in this manner.

Maternus a Rebell.

There was one *Maternus* a Souldier, that had comitted many villanous Outrages: whereupon forsaking the Campe, he associated diuers Rencgadoes like himselfe, and quickly rallied together a great Rabble of Rorers; waiting and spoiling Villages and Fields. Hauing got much Booty, there resorted to him a farre greater Number of Rogues, whom he promised great Rewards; and hauing made them Sharers with him, he was so followed, that now they seemed not to be a Packe of Thceues, but an Host of Men, or a full Armie. For they tooke great Cities, and breaking vp Prisons euerly where, set all Prisoners and Malefactors at liberty; which all turned Souldiers, in hope of Pillage and Impunity. Thus did they ramble ouer all *Gallia*, and *Spaine*,

Spaine, sacking and burning all the great Cities they tooke.

When *Commodus* heard this, he sent to the Vicegerents and Gouvernours of those Countries, very sharpe and minatory Letters, charging them with base Cowardliness, and commanding them to leuy an Army against them. Which when those Free-booters vnderstood, thinking those Countries but hollow Ground for them, they disperst themselues, and slinking thorow vnused By-ways, made their Rendezuous in *Italy*: where *Maternus* beganne now to looke bigge, and take more vpon him: consulting with his companions, how he might rise to be a King. For seeing his former Aduentures succeeded beyond his Hopes, he resolved to vndertake some gallant Attempt; or (since he had runne so great a hazard) not to die a vile and dishonourable Death. But considering withall, that he had not Forces sufficient to giue battell to *Commodus*, who was (yet) beloued of the Roman People; he resolved to try by a cunning sleight

E 2 how

Maternus aspires to Soueraignty.

Mat. vnus his
Plot.

* Cybele.

how the Prætorian Band stood affected to him. And this was his Stratagem. In the beginning of the Spring, the Romans celebrate a great Anniversary Festiuall to the * Mother of the Gods, in whose honour they likewise set forth a stately Shew: at what time; all the most sumptuous and precious stuffe of the Citizens, & the choicest Jewells and Singularities of the Emperors, are solemnly carried before the Image of the Goddesse; all men hauing liberty to reuell and maske at pleasure, and to disguise themselves in the Habits of what Magistrate or Officer they fancy, (be they neuer so Great) so that a man can hardly discern the true from the counterfeit. This, *Maternus* imagined would be a fit time to colour his Treason, and to act his Designe, which was, to arme himselfe and his Followers, in all points, like the Emperours Guard: whereby they might thrust in among the Speares and Halberds, as part of his Traine, and suddenly dispatch him, ere any were aware. With this purpose he priuily entred the City with a select Troope;

He is detected
by his Fellows,
and executed.

Troope: but some of his companions disdaining that their Fellow-theefe should become their Prince and Soueraigne, discovered all to the Emperour: whereupon before the Solemnity, this King of Rakehels and his Complices, were apprehended and executed according to their Demerits. *Commodus* hauing sacrificed and rendred Thanks & supplications to the Goddesse, for his Deliuerance, kept her Holiday with great Deuotion, honouring the Shew with his own presence, which made all the people so glad, that they celebrated the Day with great ioy, for the Emperours safety.

The Reason why the Romans haue this Goddesse in such high Veneration, I haue thought good to declare out of their Histories, because it is not commonly knowne to the Greekes.

They say, that her Image was let fall by *Ioue*, and that it is vknowne who made it, or what it is made of; and they firmly belecue it is no humane Handiworke. The Tradition is, that it fell

The History of
the chiefe Ro-
man Goddesse.

fell in old time from Heauen, into a Field of *Phrygia*, called *Pessinus*, by occasion of that fall of the Image (it being there first discouered.) Others report, that a Battell was there fought betwixt *Ilus* the Phrygian, and *Tantalus* a Lydian, the Quarrell being, either about a Way, or for the stealing away of *Ganymede*: & when they had long fought on euen termes, and many were slaine on both sides, the Place had that name of the great slaughter there made. There likewise they say, that while *Ganymedes* Brother stroue to rescue him from his Louer, he was pull'd in peeces betwixt them: but to salue the matter, it was giuen out, that *Ioue* tooke him from them both; whereupon he had diuine honour ascribed to him. In this * *Pessinus* the Phrygians in old time celebrated their *Orgia* vpon the banks of the Riuer * *Gallus*, (whence the gelded Priests of the Goddesse, are called *Galli*.) But when the Roman State beganne to flourish, the Oracle telling them that their Empire should continue and ouertop all Others, if they could get

* See *Plinie* l. 5. s. 32.

* Of which Riuer whose-ener dranke, became so mad that he gelded himselfe.

get among them the Goddesse of *Pessinus*, they dispatched Embassadors into *Phrygia*, to desire the Goddesse Image, which was easily granted them, because they alleaged that they were their Cousins of the whole bloud, and descended of *Aeneas* the Phrygian. When the Image was brought by Ship to the mouth of *Tyber*, (which was then the only Port the Romans had,) suddenly by some diuine power the Ship stood still, and could not bee moued with all the haling or pulling of the Romans. At last a Vestall Nun, that was falsely accused to haue lost her Virginity, (which she had vowed to keepe inuiolate) fearing shee should be condemned, besought the People to make the Goddesse *Pessinuntia* her Iudge: which being admitted, shee vntied her Girdle, and praied in the hearing of all, that if the Goddesse knew her to be a Virgin immaculate, she would command the Ship to remoue: the tying her Girdle to the Ship, she pulled, and it followed her: the Romans admiring both the Diuinity of the Goddesse, and

and the Virginitie of the Priestesse. And thus much of the Story of the Goddesse *Pestilentia*, which though it be somewhat long, yet I trust will not be vnpleasing to them that are not versed in Roman Antiquities.

Commodus hauing escaped the treason of *Maternus*, doubled his Guards, came seldome abroad, retired himselfe to his Houses of *Pleasure* in the Suburbs, or to his Mannours farre from the City; and gaue ouer all Exercise of Imperiall Iurisdiction.

It hapned about the same time, that all *Italy* was infested with a furious Pestilence, but especially the City of *Rome*, which of it selfe was wonderfull populous and had (besides) a great Number of strangers in it, that resorted thither from all parts of the World. By reason of which Confluence, there was a strange Mortality of Men & Beasts: Then was *Commodus* perswaded by his Physitians, to retire to *Laurentum*, which had a more coole and temperate Aire, and many shadie Groues of Laurell, (from whence it tooke the name.)

For

A Plague at
Rome.

For they said, that the sweet smell and pleasant shade of * Bay-trees, did much auaille against the Contagion: For which purpose also, the Citizens (by Aduice of Physitians) anointed their Eares and Nostrills with precious Ointments, and continually vsed Perfumes and sweet Odoraments; that their Senses (as they said) being preposessed, the infected Aire might not enter, or if it did, might be ouer-mastered: But notwithstanding, the Plague still raged, and Men and Beasts were euery where found dead, on heapes: There was also a grieuous Famine in the City, vpon this occasion: One *Cleander* a Phrygian, hauing beene publicly sold for a Slaue by the common Crier, became the Emperours Page: and being bred in the Court, grew at last into such fauour with *Commodus*, that he preferd him to great Honour and Authority, as first to be Squire of the Body, then Gentleman of his Bed-chamber: lastly, Captaine of the Guard. This Fellow was so puffed vp with Pride and too much ranknesse of Prosperity, that he also

* Of Antidotes against the Plague, and Groues of Bayes, See *L. St. Albans* Naturall History, Century 10. Experiment 913. and 936.

A Famine at
Rome.

Cleander a Favorite.

F

had

His Treason.

*An Activity-Court.

He is generally hated.

had a minde to the Empire. And hauing got a huge Masse of Treasure, he Monopoliz'd and ingroft great store of Corne, which hee had lockt in Granaries ; intending when the City was pinch't with Want, suddenly to winne the Good wills of the Commons and Souldiers, with magnificent Donatiues. He also erected a stately *Gymnasium, and a publike Bath. These were his Baits to catch the people.

But the Romans hauing long borne him a grudge, and hated him for his insatiable Auarice ; said that he was the only cause of their Calamities. And first they publikely traduced him in the Theaters : but at last, All in generall ranne to the Emperours Palace in the Suburbs, crying out against *Cleander*, and demanding Iustice vpon him. All the Suburbs being in an Vpore, while *Commodus* lay Wantonizing in the innermost roomes, and knew not of the Tumult without, (for *Cleander* lookt to that) on a sudden (ere any wist) there rusht among the People the Emperours armed

He armes the Souldiers against the Commons.

armed Horsemen ; who by *Cleanders* command, wounded and ouerthrew all afore them. The Citizens being all Footmen, and Vnarmed, were not able to resist : Whereupon they fled amaine into the City, but being followed by the Cornets of Horse, great numbers were slaine & trampled vnder the Horse-feet, or thronged to Death : for the Lanciers pursuing them to the Gates (without any stay,) kild them outright. The Citizens which kept home, vnderstanding what slaughter was made of their Friends and Neighbours, shut their doores, and from their House-tops threw Stones and Tiles at the Horse-men. And now the Commons had the better : for, not fighting hand to hand, but darting and throwing euery where aloft (out of their reach) they wounded many of them, and put them to flight : some were slaine by the continuall throwing of Stones ; others were throwne to the Ground by their Horses, which stumbled on the Stones that lay on heapes.

Also the Bands of Foot, which were
F 2 billeted

Fadilla Commodus his sister.

She detects Cleander.

billeted in the City, and hated the Horse-Troopes, suddenly came to the Aid of the Citizens. A Ciuill Warre being thus begunne, yet durst none tell *Commodus*, for feare of *Cleander*. At last, *Fadilla*, (his eldest sister) running to the Emperour (for they could not deny accesse to her) with her haire discheuild, and in mourning Weeds, prostrated herselfe at his feet, and said; *Your Maiestie here pursues your pleasures, and little know in what danger you are. We your flesh and bloud are ready to bee slaughterd. Your City of Rome, and a great part of your Army is ouerthrowne; and those Outrages which Barbarians would not offer, your owne Seruants haue acted; yea they, on whom you haue heaped greatest Honours, are your chiefe Enemies: Cleander, hath armed the Commons and Souldiers against you; and being hated of one sort, and loued of the other; both sides are vp in Armes, and are now killing one another, and filling the Citie with bloud. And We anon shall smart for this Geere, vnlesse you presently make an end of that your wicked Seruant, who is the Author* of

of all this mischiefe, and will instantly be your Ruine. Hauing thus said, she rent her Garment, and diuers there present, taking heart at the words of so great a Lady, put *Commodus* into a terrible Fright. And now fearing the instant Danger, he sends hastily for *Cleander*, who knew nothing of what was told the Emperour, but suspected somewhat. Being come, he commands him to be Arrested; and hauing stricke off his Head, and fastned it to a Speares point, he sent it to the Commons; to whom it was a most pleasant and welcome Spectacle.

Cleander be-headed.

Thus was that bloody Broile extinguishd, and the Fight on both sides ceased. For the Souldiers seeing him slaine, in whose Quarrell they fought, feared the Emperours Displeasure: for it was now apparant, that He was abused, and that what was done, was without his Warrant. But the Commons were well satisfied with his Death, that was the cause of all the Mischiefe: And now *Cleanders* two Sonnes (all the children he had) and all that had

beene his *Flies* and *Familiars*, were murdered, to a man; whose Carcasses were drag'd through the City in most opprobrious sort, and lastly, throwne into the lakes. This was the fatall End of *Cleander*, and his Complices : Humanity (as I may say) hauing ambitiously shewed in one Man, that as Fortune can vpon small Occasion, raise from low Degree, to high Dignity; so in vnexpected manner, She can likewise præcipitate whom she hath aduanced.

Commodus being now afraid, lest the Commons would rise, and attempt some new matter against him; was perswaded notwithstanding by his Courtiers, to enter the Citie : where being receiued by the People with great Applause and Magnificence, he reposed himselfe in the Imperiall Palace. And now hauing past so many *sharpe Pikes*, hee was ieaious of euery one, killing first one, and then another; for he gaue credit to all Accusations, * though neuer so false. Moreouer, he was so enslaued to lundry sensuall Pleasures, which tooke him vp wholly Day and Night, that he

Commodus his Cruelty and Credulity.

* Διαβολαῖς.

abandon'd all Honourable Studies and Exercises, and banisht from his Court, as insidious Persons; all that had the least measure of Honesty or Learning. But Buffons and Debauched Miscreants; were (as his chiefe Minions) most powerfull with him. He was excessiue giuen to Coach-races, and Fighting with wilde Beasts : more than became the Modesty or Maiesty of a Soueraigne Prince : yet his Flatterers extold him as a braue Champion, for those Feats.

At this time, there appeared in the Skie diuers fearefull signes. Starres were seene continually in the Day-time, and blazing Comets of a huge length, hangd (as it were) in the midst of the Aire. All sorts of Creatures contrary to kinde, brought forth monstrous and deformed Births. But that which most grievously afflicted the City for the present, and amazed them with the Ominous Prefage, was this most hideous Disaster; that the Temple of *Peace* (the stateliest and daintiest Monument of *Rome*) was on a sudden, without any

Strange Prodiges.

Storme

Storme or Tempest preceding (but only a little Earth-quake) quite burnt to the Ground: whether by Lightning, or Fire (which might burst out, by the shaking of the Earth) is vncertaine. That Temple was the richest of all other, because of its Strength; being curiously adorned with * Donaries, of Masseue Gold and Siluer: yea, euery Person of *Quality*, had stored there his principall Treasure. But the Fire hapning in the Night, made many rich men poore. All therefore deplor'd the publike, and euery one his priuate Losse. When the Fire had consumed that Temple, it burned also many of the most beautifull Buildings of the City: among which was the goodly *Fane* of *Vesta*; in so much that the Image of * *Pallas*, which the Romans kept in secret and sacred Veneration, and was brought (as they say) from *Troy* into *Italy*, was now first scene in publike: For the Vestall Virgins carried it through the *Sacred Street*, and conueighed it into the Emperours Palace. Most of the fairest *Peeces* in all the City, perisht in these Flames,

* *Ava. Signat.*

Rome fired.

* The Palladium; the sacred Fire, &c. were in the Vestalls Charge. *L. Flor. lib. 1. c. 2.*

Flames, which ragged many dayes together, and could not be quenched but with sudden showers which fell: whereupon, it was wholly reputed a *Celestiall Worke*; all men being fully perswaded, that the Fire began and ended by the Decree and Power of the Gods. Diuers also coniectured, that the Burning of the Temple of Peace was a *Prognosticke* of Warres to ensue: which Conceit was verified by the sequell, as in the succeeding Bookes wee shall declare.

The Roman Citizens being thus surrounded with direfull Mis-haps; (one in the necke of another) began to looke lowre vpon *Commodus*; imputing all their mileries to his illegall Executions and dismall Deeds: For his Excesses were notoriously knowne to all; neither did he seek to vaile them: being ambitious to exhibit in publike, those bale things which he formerly acted in secret. Yea to such drunken Dotage he was now growne, that he refused his Fathers Name, commanding himselfe, in stead of *Commodus* the sonne of *Marcus*, to be stiled *Hercules* the sonne of *Iupiter*:

Commodus his prodigious vanitie.

Jupiter; and accordingly he forsooke the Roman and Imperiall Habit; and in stead thereof, thrust himselfe into a Lions skin, and carried a great Club in his hand; and (which made him extremely ridiculous) he put on also Purple *Amazonian* Robes, embrodred with Gold; expressing in one and the same Garbe, a Feminine Delicacie, and a more than Masculine Austerity. This was his daily Attire. Hee gaue also new Names to the Moneths of the Yeare, abolishing the old, and calling them after his owne "Surnames: most whereof, referd to *Hercules*, as the most valorous *Heroe*. Further, he commanded his Statuets to be erected in all parts of the Citie, and One before the Senate-house, in forme of an Archer ready to shoot; to the end his very Images might strike a terrour into the Beholders. But after his Death, the Senate tooke it away, and placed there the Image of " *Libertie*. And now could not *Commodus* any longer containe, but needs must he make himselfe an Actor in publike Shewes: proclaiming, that he would with his

" As August,
Commodus; Sep-
tember, *Hercu-*
leus; December,
Amazonia.

" A Goddess
among the Ro-
mans.

his owne hands kill the Wilde Beasts that should be presented, and likewise fight at sharpe with the brauest Sword-men. When this strange Newes was blaz'd abroad, there flocked innumerable People out of *Italy* and the Countries adioyning, to see that Spectacle which they neuer saw, nor heard of the like before. For he was generally reputed such an excellent Marke-man, as, whatsoeuer he aimed at, he could hit with Dart or Arrow; and though he had about him most expert Parthian Archers, and Numidian Darters, yet he farre exceeded them all.

Commodus an
excellent
Darter and
Archer.

When the Day of that Grand Solemnity was come, the Amphitheater was thronged with Spectators. Now there was a Tarras set vp for *Commodus*; wherein to runne round about it; and thence fight (aloft) with the Beasts, without endangering his Person (which showed rather his skill in Shooting, than his Valour.) Hee slew in Chase, Buckes, Does, and other horned Beasts, (except Bulls) not one escaping him: But from the Tarras he darted

at Lions, Panthers, and other of the Nobler sort of Beasts, with that rare Dexterity, as that he neuer threw the second time, nor gaue them any wound but was mortall. For when the Beast was rouzed, he presently hit it in the Head or Heart, aiming at no other part of the Body; so that as soone as it was stricke, it fell dead. For this purpose, all kinde of Wilde Beasts were brought farr and neare; and then did we first see those, which before we admired in their Pictures. Thus did he (to the Amazement of all,) at once both shew and slay whatsoever strange Beast was brought from *India*, *Æthiopia*, North or South; so speedy and ready a hand he had at his Weapon, to the Astonishment of all men.

Once did he shoot Forked Arrowes at Moresco Estriges, which were wonderful swift of foot, vsing their Wings as Sailes, in running. These did he hit so pat in the Necke, that their heads being stricke off, they ran awhile * headlesse, so furious was the blow.

Another time, a Panther hauing seiz'd

* See the reason hereof, in that Noble L. of St. Albans Nat. Hist. Cent. 4. Exp. vlt.

a man (that was brought into the Lists,) with such vehement speed, that all made account she would instantly teare him in peeces; he darted at her with such lucky speed, as that he killed the Beast and saued the Man, preuenting the Dint of her Teeth, with the Point of his Weapon. Hee slew also 100. Lions with so many Darts; their Bodies falling in such order, that they might easily be numbred, (not one Dart miscarrying.)

These Feats of Actiuitie, though vnbe-seeming a Prince, yet because they were Prooves of his Valour and Dexterity, were not vnpleasing to the People. But when he entred the Amphitheater naked, and beganne to play the Gladiator; O it was a direfull Sight to see a most Nobly-descended Emperour, after so many Trophies of his Father and Ancestors, not to fight like a Souldier against Barbarians, nor to arme himselfe like a Roman Prince, but to prostitute so Glorious a Dignity, to so sordid a Profession. He easily vanquish'd his Antagonists, and attempted no further than to

Commodus plaies the Fencer.

draw blood; every one yeelding him the Mastery; as acknowledging him rather an Emperour than a Fencer. In this mad humour he ranged so farre, as that he purposed to forsake his Palace, and liue in a Fence-Schoole: and now being weary of the name of *Hercules*, hee assumed the Name of a famous Sword-player, deceased. And whereas the Romans had the Colossus or Image of the Sunne in great Veneration, he tooke the head from it, and set on another, representing his owne; inscribing in the Basis, not his Fathers Titles, or any Imperiall Stile (as hee was wont) but in stead of *Germanicus* [or Conquerour of *Germany*] The Vanquisher of a thousand Gladiators.

But now was it high time for him to leaue his Foolery, and the City to be freed from his Tyranny; which fell out in the beginning of the Yeare, on that Day which the Romans keepe holy to *Ianus* the most ancient God of *Italy*, who entertained *Saturne*, expelled by his sonne *Iupiter*; from whose Concealment, it had the

Ianus his Feast.

the name of *Latium*. Wherefore to this day they first celebrate the Feast of *Saturne*, and then of *Ianus*: whose Image hath two heads; alluding to the beginning of the new, and end of the old yeare. Now whereas the Romans were wont on this prime Festiuitie, to congratulate each other, and to send to their friends peeces of Gold and Siluer, and diuers other gifts interchangeably, in token of mutuall Loue & Obseruance: and the chiefe Magistrates of the City vested themselves in rich Purple, in honour of that great Solemnity; *Commodus* then determined to issue forth, not out of the Imperiall Palace (according to the ancient custome) but out of a Fence-schoole; and to shew himselfe openly to the people, not in his Robes and Princely Purple, but armed like a Master of Defence, with a traine of Gladiators following him.

This his Determination, when he had imparted to *Marcia* his most Honoured Concubine, who as if she were his married Wife, had all the Honours of Emperesse, but

New yeares gifts.

Marcia Commodus his Concubine.

except

except that of FIRE; She fell downe on her knees; and besought him with teares, not to prophane the Maiesty of the Roman Empire in that sort, nor to hazard his Person among such lewd & desperate Ruffians. But when after much intreaty, she saw there was no hope of preuailing, She went away weeping. Then he sends for *Latius*, the Generall of his Armies, and *Electus* his Chamberlaine, and commands them to prepare a Lodging for him that night in the Fence-school, that he might the next morning goe from thence to sacrifice on that solemn Festival, and shew himselfe in Armes to the Romans. They humbly desired him to desist from that purpose, & not to doe an Act so vnworthy an Emperour; whereupon, in great Rage he commands them out of his presence; and retiring into his Bed-chamber, to repose himselfe at Noone (as he was wont) he tooke his Table-Bookes, and writ downe those which he Doomed to death that Night. Among which, were *Marcia*, *Latius*, *Electus*, & a great number of Nobles and Senators; and

for he was fully resolved to cut off all, the ancient Customes, & others, which were his Fathers friends; lest his ill-habits Deeds should be checked by their greater Censures; intending to divide their Goods and Estates among the Souldiers and Sword players; that the one sort might defend him, the other delight him, having thus done, he laid his Table-Bookes on the Table, not imagining that any would enter his chamber. Now there was a little Boy that could scarce speake; but as those which being half naked; are deckt with Gold and precious Stones; and are the choicest Delights of the Noblest Romans. This Boy did *Commodus* so extremely love, that he oft lay in bed with him; and was called *Philo-Commodus*; that is, *Commodus* his Darling; his Name shewing how hee loved him. This child being full of play, went (as he usually did) into the Bed-chamber, (while *Commodus* was bathing, and reuelling) with this *Minutus*, and taking the Bookes to play with, went forth, and as some Divine Boyes ordain

to him, which
which hee
which hee

* *Commodus*

Philo-Commodus

H

ned,

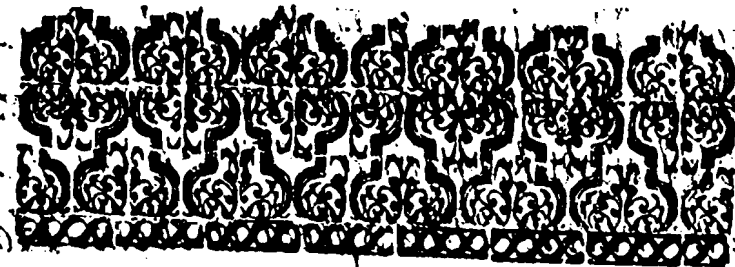
ned, *Marcia* took him, and catching him
up in her armes and kissing him (for shee
dearly loved him) took the Booke from
him, fearing lest by his childish dalliance,
he might blot out some matters of Weight.
As soone as she perceived it was *Commodus*
owne hand, she had a great Appetite to
read it. But when she found the deadly
Contents, and that the before all others
was to be slaughtered, and that *Lucius* and
Electus were to follow, with such a Num-
ber of Noble Persons, she sighed and said
thus to herselfe: Is it so, *Commodus*? doe you
thus reward my Love? Have I deserved
this at your hands, for enduring your ig-
noble and debauched Conditions so many
years? You shall finde that a sober wo-
man is able to dash your drunken Designs.
Immediately she sends for *Electus* (as shee
was wont) in regard he was Lord Cham-
berlaine; who (as it was thought) was
over-familiar with her, and giving him
the Booke, said; See (*Electus*) what a Ban-
quet we are to have this night. Hee, as
soone as hee read it, Being amazed (now
he

Marcia and o-
thers conspire
the Emperours
death.

he was an Egyptian boone, a bold and da-
ring fellow, and very cholerick) leapt up
the booke, and sent it forth with by a tru-
sty messenger to *Lucius*, who being like-
wise startled, instantly repaired to *Marci-
dia*, pretending he was to speake with her
about dressing the Emperours Schoole for
the Emperour. Under this colour they
resolved that now they must instantly doe
or suffer without delay or procrastination.
They concluded to dispatch him by poi-
son, which *Marcia* undertooke to effect
very easily, in that she still used to give him
the first Cup, which from her hand hee
would take most kindly. As soone as hee
returned from his Bathing, she presented
him a poisoned Cup of Arboreall
Wine. *Commodus* being exceeding thirsty
with much Baking and chasing of wilde
Beasts, quaffes it off as hee was wont.
Wherupon his head being very heavy, he
fell into a slumber by reason of his vhe-
ment exercise, (as was supposed) Where-
fore *Electus* and *Marcia* commanded all to
stand

to nothing still hee had said and
 ymmed to the people of the Country
 and hee had said none of those things
 and hee had said his life with those Vices and
 ignoble fixities as hee had
 broken downe

The End of the First Booke.



HERODIAN

His

IMPERIAL HISTORY.

THE SECOND BOOKE.

The Contents.

Pertinax his Description. His
 Magnanimitie. His worthy
 Esteeme. Lætus his Speeche to the
 Armie. Pertinax proclaimed Em-
 perour, and confirmed by the Senate.
 His Speeche to the Senators. His rare
 Government. Embassies congratula-
 tory.

tory. Pertinax a Father to the Com-
 mons. Reformers punish Pertinax
 his love to Learning. The Prætori-
 ans murder. His Speech to them. He
 is murthred, and extremely lamen-
 ted. Prætorians make Port-sale of
 the Empire. Iulian buyes it. The
 Common cause of him. He is aban-
 ched. Niger commended. His Po-
 licie to get the Empire. Stage-plays
 and Revels. Nigers Speech. He is
 elected Emperour, and visited by Em-
 bassadours. His Securitie and Er-
 rour. Seuerus described. His first
 Dreams. His deepe Reliquie. He is
 elected Emperour. His Speech. His
 Expedition to Rome. Italy sur-
 prized. Iulian amazed. Calpes
 Elephants trained. Seuerus his Mira-
 clem. Iulian deserted, and slaine.
 Seuerus

Seuerus takes the Prætorians by a
 Train. His Speech to them. They
 are degraded. He enters Rome. He
 courts the Commons and Nobles.
 His warlike Preparation against Ni-
 ger. He feares the Britans. Their
 Elogie. Albinus their Governour.
 He is declared Cæsar by Seuerus.
 Herodian writes a History of 70.
 yeeres.



COMMODOVS being * slaine,
 (as hath beene related in the
 former Booke) the Conspira-
 tors (carefull to conceale
 the Fact from the Souldiers which watch-
 ed the Emperors Palace, caused his Corps
 to be wrapped and wound vp in a course
 Couerlet, and gaue order to two of their
 trustiest Seruants to carry it forth, as some
 void stuffe sent out of the Bedchamber.
 They which conueyed it away, passed
 easily thorow the Guards, which were

* In the Night

either so drunke or drowfie, that they could scarce hold their Halberds; or else gaue small heed to that, which (they thought) little concerned them. Thus was the Emperours Corps closely carried out of the Court Gates, and sent (by Coach) that night to *Aristeum*.

Letus, *Electus*, and *Marcia*, hauing debated what was best to be done, resolved to giue out, that he died suddenly of an Apoplexy; which they thought would easily be credited, his excessive Epicurisme & Intemperance being so vulgarly known. But their first care was, to elect for Emperour some ancient and temperate Man, both for their owne safetie, and that all might haue a breathing time, after so bitter and wanton a Tyrannie.

After Consultation, they held none so fit as *Pertinax*, who was an *Italian* borne, famous for many Noble Acts in Peace and Warre, and renowned for many Victories ouer the German and Easterne Barbarians; and the only Able Man that was left of all those Honourable Persons which

Commodus

Pertinax his
description.

Commodus was recommended to by his Father *Marcus*, who reposed greatest Confidence in him, aboue all his Nobles and Commanders; whom *Commodus* either rewarded for his Grauitie, or spared for his Povertie: for that also was part of his Praise, that whereas he took greatest paines in gouerning the State, yet he was the poorest of all the Nobilitie. To him therefore at midnight, when all were asleepe, *Letus* and *Electus*, with a few others of that Faction, addresse themselves; who finding the Gates shut, call vp the Porter, who opening the Gate, and perceiuing the Souldiers, and *Letus* the Generall, ran in great Affright and Amazement to tell his Master. *Pertinax* bids him bring them to him, saying, that now that Mischiefe would betide him, which he had long expected. They say, that such was his vndaunted Spirit, that he neither forooke his Bed, nor changed his Countenance, but with a bold Courage, and vnappalled Visage, spake thus to *Letus* and *Electus*, (whom he supposed to be sent to murder

I 2 him:)

His braue Spirit.

him: *Th*is indeed is the End that every night I have a long while expected, being the last of all his Fathers Friends; and I have oft wondered that Commodus was so slow to dispatch mee. Why then forbear ye? Dost as you are commanded, that I may be rid from continuall Feare and Anxietie. I am repayed: Speake no further of these things, which are so farre beneath your merits: Our coming is not for your Destruction, but for the Safetie of our selues and the Roman Empire. For the Tyrant is dead, and hath his due Reward; having suffered that which he intended to inflict on us. Our coming therefore is to anuise you in the Empire, whom of all the Nobilitie wee know to be, for Vertue, Sincerity, Age, and Gravity, most loved and beloved by the People; not doubting but that our Choice will be acceptable to them, and most safe for us. Pertinax answered; I am too old to be deluded in this sort. Why doe you offer to abuse me as a Coward, and so to flayme me? Then said Electus; Since you will not credit vs, read this Booke: (you know Commodus his hand, having bene so long

used

His worthy
illceme.

Equipped in
it

used to it) and then you shall perceive what danger we have escaped, and that we speake not this to try you, but truly to informe you. Which when Pertinax had done, knowing them also to be his ancient Friends, and vnderstanding all the Businesse, he yielded himselfe to their Dispose. First then it was thought fit, to send to the Army to know how the Souldiers would take it. But Electus vndertooke to get their good will, being their Generall, and therefore of some Authority with them. Wherefore the Night being faire spent, and the next Day the Feast of the New yeare, they hastened to doe all before it were day. They sent also some of their trustiest servants, to disperse the Newes of Commodus death, and Pertinax his Going to the Army to bee made Emperour. Which when it was divulged in the City, all the People in an ex-rasie of Ioy, ranne through the streets to bring the happy tidings to their friends that were of any note for Wealth or Worth; (for such were in greatest Danger of Commodus.) Wherefore they ranne to the Temples

I 3

Who in greatest
dangers of
Tyrants.

ples

ples and Altars to giue thanks to the God (for their Deliuerance.) And now some cried out, the Tyrant was dead; some, the Fencer; others, worse than all this: For that which before they durst not mutter for Feare, they now proclaimed with impunity. But the most part of the People posted to the Army, being much afraid, lest the ruder Souldiers accustomed (vnder the former Tyranny) to Ravine and Spoile, would not admit for Emperour, so milde a Prince as *Pertinax*; which to the end to perswade them to, the more forcibly, they went thither in great Numbers. *Latius*, *Electus*, and *Pertinax* (with the multitude) being entred the Campe, and the Souldiers called together, *Latius* spake thus.

L A E T V S his Speech to
the Army.

C O M M O D V S our Emperour is
dead of an Apoplexy. There is
no other Cause of his death but him-
selfe:

Latius his
speech to the
Army.

selfe: and though wee endenoured
to reclaime him to a better course of
life, yet all was but lost labour: For
carrying himselfe as you know he was
wont, he hath killed himselfe with
Gluttony and Drunkenesse. This
was his fatall Destiny, for all die, not
by the same meanes, but by different
waies come to their common End. But
instead of him, We, and the People of
Rome, here bring you a Man Ve-
nerable for Age, Gravity, and Integ-
rity, and of approved Skill in Mar-
tiall Affaires, whose braue * *Exploits*
you which are Veterans, experi-
mentally know; the rest cannot but
acknowledge, that he hath these many
yeares gouerned the City with singu-
lar Honour and Admiracion. For-
tune doth therefore tender you not
only

* *Pertinax* had
done honou-
rable seruice in
Britaine, and
was therefore
surnamed
Britannicus.

only a Prince, but a Parent most indulgent: whose Government, as it will be pleasing to your selues here present, so it must needs be acceptable to your Fellowes in Armes, which guard the Banks of the Rivers, and defend the Marches of the Empire, in regard they well remember his Noble Acts. And now we shall not need to winne the Barbarians with Maney; who will be sufficiently awed with the Experience of what they suffered vnder his Victorious Armes.

Latus hauing thus said, while the Souldiers pawed, and were demurring on the Businesse; all the People with ioyfull Acclamations, proclaimed *Pertinax Emperour* and father of their Countrey. So also did the Souldiers, though not with the same Alacrity: for the Multitude being

euery

euery where mixt among them who were vnarmed because it was Holy-day, did after a sort constraine them to it, being but few (in comparison of them.) All therefore hauing sworn Fealty to him, and been present at the Sacrifice, the Souldiers and Commons with Lawrell branches in their hands, conduct him ere it was Day-light, to the Imperiall Palace, thither being come, hee was exceeding pensue. For though he wanted neither Spirit nor Resolution, yet did the present Action much distract and dismay him; not that he doubted so much his owne safety (for he had despised greater Perills) but considering with himselfe the sudden Change of the Tyrannicall Government, and the Noble Descent of some chiefe Senators; he supposed they would not suffer the Empire to be iudged in a man of a meane and obscure Familie, after an Emperour of so Princely a Linage. For though his Life was much commended for his Temperate Carriage, and for Deeds of Armes he were most famous; yet was

K he

hiesar exceeded in Birth by many of the Senacorian Order. Wherefore as soone as it was Day-light, he went to the Senate-house, not suffering Fire to be carried before him, nor admitting any other Symbole of Soueraignty, till he knew the pleasure of the Senators: But they, when they saw him, did with one Accord ioyfully receiue him, styling him *Augustus* and Emperour. Which high and enuious Title (as he termed it) he disauowed at first, excusing himselfe, by reason of his Age, and desiring them to passe by him, and Elect some of the prime Nobility, which might better become the Empire. Then taking *Glabrio* by the hand, and pulling him forth, hee placed him in the Imperiall Throne; He was the most Nobly descended of all the Peeres, & deriued his Pedegree from *Aeneas*, son to *Venus* and *Anchises*, and had bene twice Consul. Notwithstanding he spake thus; I whom you iudge most Worthy, doe hererender you this Princely Honour; you all this Noble Assembly adiuages you the Soueraigne Rule. Whereupon being importunely importuned, and

Glabrio a Noble Roman.

and almost compelled by the Senate, after much relictation, he seated himselfe in the Chaire of Estate, and spake as followeth.

Perinax confirmed by the Senate.

PERINAX his Speech to the Senators.

Your singular Zeale, and incomparable Loue, in preferring mee before so many Excellent Peeres, being so farre from the least suspicion of Flattery, that it is a pregnant Prooofe, and cleere Demonstratiue of your Fidelity; might haply make some other, more bold and cheerefull, to accept this Offer; and to imagine, he might easily undertake so great a Charge, that should be supported with your Friendship. But these rare and high Favour's amaze me with their very Sublimity, as the

K 2 sight

sight whereof, I am extremely inti-
 midated. For it is no easie matter for
 a man, condignely to requite great
 Benefits. Among Friends, if grea-
 ter Courtesies be returned, than
 were exhibited; not so much the
 Gratitude it selfe, as the Gratitude
 is respected. But when a man
 Friend hath (first) obliged him by
 small Offices, if he shew not all di-
 gressive Expressions of
 thankful Heart, it may well bee
 thought to proceed rather from
 Blackish Dulnesse, and Dullish In-
 gratitude, than any other Defect.
 I see therefore, what a hard Task
 I shall undergoe, to render myselfe
 worthy of this Great Honour, which
 you haue conferred upon me. For the
 Glory of Sovereigns consisteth in

"Qual the Graine of State, but in such
 "Royal Affairs as are well becoming
 "a Prince. Euen have much
 Men abhorre the Envy which is
 done and past; for in such times they
 are to hope for better Times. Great
 Injuries are neuer remembered; imp-
 "Griouances are easily forgot-
 but Good turns are not so easily
 as they are done together with their
 Attention. I thought me worthy of
 the sweetness of Liberty, and of
 the bitterness of Bondage and Slavery.
 Now do men take in a volun-
 tary, that they may secure their
 Quid; for that they hold, belong to
 it them as their proper Right. But he
 "that is spoiled of his Goods or For-
 "tunes, can neuer forget his misfortune
 "Hunger. Neither do men meddle with
 esteem

Injuries and
 Benefits.

esteem the best Change that can hap-
pen for the Publike Good, (for com-
mon Benefits are little regarded of
private persons.) But if they be
damned in their own particular
estates, then are they touched to the
quicke. Moreover, they which have
been used to the profuse Prodigality
of Tyrants, if a man get about to re-
duce them (when money failes) to a
more frugall and regular Course, they
will be ready to impute it rather to
miserable Basenesse, than prudent
Moderation: not considering, that
such Excessive Donatives (as here-
tofore) cannot be given without Op-
pression and Rapine. But hee that
with Discretion gives to every one
according to his Merit, is so far from
despoiling others unjustly, that hee
teaches

teaches all (by his Example) to bee
prouident husbands. These things
if you take into consideration, you
will (I trust) lend me your hel-
ping hands, and assist me in the Ad-
ministration of the Empire: for see-
ing you are not like to live under a
Tyranny, but rather an Optimacie,
you have Cause to hope well, and per-
swade others also to the like Con-
fidence.

Pertinax having with this Speech ex-
ceedingly cheered the Senators, was with
generall Acclamations, and great Honour
and Reuerence, conducted to the Tem-
ples of Ioue and the other Gods, where ha-
ving sacrificed for his good success in the
Empire, he went to the Imperiall Palace.

When it was voiced, how graciously he
had spoken to the Senate, & written to the
Commons, all men were infinitely plea-
sed; hoping that now they should have a
worthy

*Pertinax his
rare govern-
ment.*

Worthy and Temperate Governour, and a Father rather than an Emperour. For he made an Edict, that the Souldiers should no more wrong the Commoners; nor abuse any Passengers; intending to plant every where good Order and Ciuility. When he went abroad, or sat in Iudicature, he shewed what a meeke and sweet spirit he had. And by his zealous imitation of *Marcus* his Government, he did exceedingly content the elder sort, and attract the Affections of All, who being deliuered from the cruell Thraldome of Tyranny, liued now in great Peace and Security.

The Fame of his Princely Vertues, moued the Nations, Armies, and Confederates of the Roman Empire to Deifie him. Yea, the Barbarians which had revolted, or purposed to rebell, ouer-awed with the Remembrance of his Militar Vertue in former times; and calling to mind his singular Integrity, Iustice, and Clemency, did willingly submit themselves vnto him. Embassadors also came from all Parts, to congratulate the Romans, for so Nobly-qualified an Emperour.

Embassadors.

But

But that, which was such a generall Reioycement, was much resented by the Souldiers in Rome, which were the ordinary Guard of the Emperour. For being forbidden Rapine and Outrage, and recalled to a Quill and Regular forme of Life by the Emperours Edict, they reputed his milde and moderate Government to end to their great Dishonour and Disparagement; and because it bridled their Licentiousness, they resolved, not to endure it. For a while, they did but grudge and grumble at his Commandes; but at last, when he had not yet reigned a Month, (having giuen pregnant Hopes, in that short time, of many excellent good Acts,) the malignitie of Fortune ouerthrew all, and quashed all his Noble and Admirable Designs for Advancement of the Weale-publike. For he first enacted that all the Waste Grounds in Italy and other Countreys, (though of the Princes Demesne) should be plained & improved, and freely giuen to them that would cultivate and manure it: to which purpose he granted

*The Pretorians
Maligne
him.*

*Pertinax a Fa-
ther to the
Commons.*

*and reuoluted
the Roman
Empire.*

L

10

to Husbandmen, ten-yeres immunitye from all Taxes, and securitie from all further Trouble during his Reigne. As for the peculiar Goods of the Emperours, he permitted not his Name to be stamped on them, saying, that the Proprietie thereof pertained not to the Emperour, but to the Roman State in generall. He released all Tolls and Imposts exacted in the time of Tyrannie, at the Banks of Riuer, Ports of Cities, High Wayes, and Rodes; asserting them to their ancient Freedom. Many like good Deeds he intended; which shewed his firme Resolution to benefit his Subiects. He banished Informers out of the City, and commanded them to be punished where euer they were found, to the end none might be endangered or ruined by their forged Criminations. Hereupon the Nobilitie and Communalitie promised to themselves an assured happy Estate. For he was so moderate and Fellow-like, that he would not admit his Sonne, a young Youth, into the Court, but caused him to liue a private life. He frequented the public like

Informers punished.

Perlinaxer loue to learning.

01

I

like

like Schooles and Lectures, repairing also to the vluall Places of Exercise, where he demeaned himselfe as an ordinary man, without any Princely Pompe or State.

Perlinax thus ruling with singular good Order and Decencie, the Prætorian Soldiers (not enduring to be restrained any longer from their accustomed Rapines and Outrages) consulted and agreed (at a drunken Feast) to make him away, (who was so great a Griouance to them) and to substitute another that would impatronize their lawlesse and licentious Misdemeanours. Whereupon, on a sudden, no man suspecting any Tumult, (for all liued in peace) in a great Fury and Brutish Rage they hurry at Noone-day (in a Military March) with drawne Swords, and Pikes aduanced, to the Emperours Palace: where the Courtiers and Officers of State, affrighted with that sudden and v unexpected Alarme, and not able (being few and vnarmed) to resist so many men at Armes, forsooke their seuerall Charges within the Verge of the Court, and fled. Howbeit,

The Prætorians mutine.

L. 2

some

some few, that were well affected, told *Pertinax* of the Souldiers Mutiny; perswading him to auoid them by Flight, and to desire the Peoples Aid. But albeit he knew it were a safe course to follow their Counsell, yet holding it an extreme Indecorum, derogatory to Imperiall Maiestie, and unworthy his former Glory, to flee, or conceal himselfe; he resolved to affront the Danger; hoping he should perswade them, and appease their causelesse Commotion. Going therefore out of his Chamber, hee met them, and asked the reason of that sudden Impression; dissuading them, without any shew of Amazement. For, composing himselfe in a Graue and Venerable Fashion, suitable to his Princely State, without any signe of Submission, Feare, or Intreaty, he spake thus.

PERTINAX

*Pertinax full of
Maiesty.*

Pertinax his Speech to
the Pratorian Souldiers.

IF you take away my Life, it will be no great matter of Gaine to you, or Loss to mee; being ask'd in this Age, with so much Honour. For this humane Life must of necessitie determine at last. But if you, to whom the preservation of your Prince is concredited, and which, by your Oath, are to guard his Person, should be the first that murther him, and so pollute your selues with spilling your Countrymans and Emperours Bloud; it were (in present) a Fact most bairous; and might proue (in future) no lesse dangerous to your selues. My conscience tells mee, I haue not wronged you at all. If you are sorry for Com-

modus Death, it was no strange thing for a Man to die : but if you thinke he was made away by Treason, it was none of my Fault : For you know, I was not so much as suspected with it, but was altogether as ignorant as your selues of what was then done. The Suspicion (if any be) must light vpon others. And though he be dead, yet shall you want nothing which is agreeable to Reason and your Estate, and not clogged with Violence and Ruine.

The like effect
of Maiesty in
Olympus, see
in Iustit. lib. 14.

He is mur-
dered.

With this Speech diuers of them were perswaded, and many retreated, being daunted with the Reuerend Maiesty of their Prince : but others flew vpon him, and slew the old Emperour while hee yet spake. Which execrable Act as soone as they had done, purposing to decline the fury of the Multitude, who (they knew) would

would take it most grievously ; they ran to their Campe ; where immuring themselves, they placed Armed men on the Battlements, to keepe the People from the Walls. This End had that renowned *Pertinax*.

When this Massacre of the Prince was diuulged, all places were full of Vproares, and dolefull Outcries ; the People ranne vpan and downe like Frantickes, in a great hurly burly ; searching for the Actors, and not wotting where to finde them, or how to be reuenged on them : but especially the Lords and Senators took it most to Heart, as a common Calamity, wanting now their indulgent Father, and most gracious Gouverneur : all men fearing a Relapse into Tyranny ; which they knew, the Souldiers so much delighted in. After a day or two, the People were calmed with their owne Fears, and the chiefe Nobles and Magistrates retired to their remotest Country houses, auoiding the Danger that might ensue, by being present at the Election of the next Successor.

And extremely
lamented.

The

The Empire
set to sale.

The Souldiers perceiving that the People were quiet, and that none durst undertake to reuenge the Princes Death; kept themselves close within the Campe, appointing those that could speake lowdest, to proclaime from the Top of the Wall, that the Empire was to be sold, and he that would giue most Siluer for it, should be invested in it, by force of Armes; and safely conducted to the Imperiall Palace. When they had made this Out-cry, none of the Worthier or Nobler sort of the Lords or Senators, nor yet any of those Wealthy Citizens, by which were the small Remaines of *Commodus Tyranny*, would goe to the Wall, to traffique with them; as scorning the Empire [OF THE WORLD] on such base and dishonourable termes.

But when *Julian*, a man of Consular Dignity, who was reputed a great monied man (but of little honesty) had Notice late in the Evening, being at Supper, in the midst of his Cups and toying of the Souldiers Proclamation; he was perswaded by his Wife and Daughter, and a Number of

rich Ba-

The Brauery
of the Romans
Spirit.

Parasites, to rise from his * Pallet, and hie him to the Wall, to see what was done. All the Way as he went, they counselled him to lay hold on the Empire, now it was proffer'd; for hauing store of Coine, hee might easily out-vie All, in magnificent Donatiues, if there should bee any Competition. As loone therefore as hee got to the Campe-Wall, hee shouted to them, promising to giue whatsoeuer they desired: for he said, he had a mighty Masse of Money, and Treasuries full of Gold and Siluer.

At that same instant, *Sulpitian* Prouost of the City, who had also beene Consull, and was *Pertinaxes* Father in law, came thither with an intent to buy the Empire. But the Souldiers were iealous of him, because of his Alliance to *Pertinax*, mistrusting, he went about to entrap them, to reuenge his Death. Wherefore reiecting him, they put downe a Ladder, and tooke vp *Julian* to the Top of the Wall, yet admitted him not into the Campe, till the Summe he should giue, were agreed vpon.

M

Being

* *eximius* (for the Romans sate not at Tables.)

Julian and *Sulpitian* offer for it.

Being entred the Campe, he promised to renew the Memory, and restore the Honours and Statuæ of *Commodus*, which the Senate had abrogated; to afford them as much Liberty, as ever they had vnder him; and to giue to euery Souldier, more Siluer than they demanded or expected, and that without Delay, in regard he had it ready at home.

Julian elected.

The Souldiers allured with such faire Hopes, proclaimed *Julian* Emperour, surnaming him *Commodus*. Then flourishing their Ensignes (which they had garnished with his Pictures) they resolved to bring him into the City. *Julian* hauing sacrificed in the Campe (as new Emperours were wont) issued forth with a stronger guard than formerly had beene accustomed. For hauing forcibly seiz'd the Soueraignty against the Peoples mind, by foule and shamefull meanes, he might iustly feare a Commotion. But the Souldiers arming themselves compleatly, put themselves in *Battalia*, that if need were, they might bee ready to fight; placing their Emperour in

in the midst, and couering their heads * with their Pikes and Targets, to preuent the Peoples throwing Stones vpon them from the House-tops (as they marched.) Thus they conducted him to the Palace, none of the Commons daring to resist; nor congratulating him (as was vsuall at the Election of Emperours.) But on the contrary, they stood a farre off, cursing and banning him, for purchasing the Empire with Money.

* In forme of a Testudo, *Vid. Lipsi de Milit. Rom.*

The Commons curse him.

Here first of all did the Souldiers fall into Extremity of Debauchednesse, and by their rauorous and insatiable Desire of Money, the Imperiall Maiestie was blasted with Contumely. For there being none to vindicate the cruell massacre of the former Prince; nor to withstand the base Brocage of the present Vsurper; it was the chiefe Cause of many Insolencies and Mutinies which afterwards happened: their Greedinesse of Money, and Contempt of Soueraignty, still inducing Murther and Bloudshed.

Julian hauing thus rauisht the Empire, plunged

plunged himselfe presently into all Riot and Disorder, little regarding State businesse; being wholly deuoted to an Vn-princely, and Voluptuary life. And now it was discouered, that he had cogged,* and cheated the Souldiers; and was not able to keepe vp his credit with them, for hee had not so great Store of Coine as hee vaunted. As for the Exchequer, *Commodus* had long since exhausted it, with his vaine Luxury, and vast prodigality. The Souldiers therefore falling short of their Hopes, were extremely offended with him, and the Commoners, who knew their minds, vtterly scorned him; railing at him, when he came abroad, and taunting him for his lewd and lasciuious Behaviour. Yea in the *Cirque or Race-yard; (where was the greatest Concourse of People) they de-cryed *Julian*; calling vpon *Niger*, the chiefeft Officer of the sacred Empire, to vindicate the Roman State, and hasten to free them from that propudious Gouvernour.

This *Niger* had beene Consull long before,

* *ῥαγισμὸς*
by a rathous.

* The Circus (or Horse-race) was built in an Ouall forme of great Length, with Rowes of Seats one about the other, able to containe about an hundred thousand Spectators.
Ἰσθμὸς Ἰσθμίου

fore, and at that time was President of *Syria*; which was then the highest and most eminent Dignity in the Empire; for the *Phenician* Nation, and all the Regions as far as *Euphrates*, were vnder his Command. He was now well stept in yeares, and hauing gone through many weighty Affaires, had got a very high Esteeme for his Moderation and Sufficiency: and was reputed to imitate *Pertinax*; for which Cause the Romans did chiefly affect him. And now in all their Assemblies they still cried aloud for him; reproaching *Julian* to his face, and vniuersally calling vpon *Niger*, with Acclamations *Imperiall.

When *Niger* vnderstood the Romans inclination, and what Out-cries they made for him in their ordinarie Meetings; considering withall, that *Julian* was condemned by the Souldiery, for falsifying with them, and condemned by the Communalty, for his Mercenary Purchase; he perswaded himselfe that the Businesse would easily be accommodated, and made no doubt of obtaining the Soueraignty.

* *Βασιλικὴς*
φωναὶς.

* *ἀντιόχου*.*Niger's Policy.*The Character
of the *Syrians*.Stage-plays
and Reuels.

Wherefore imparting these Roman Passages and Intelligences to some few Tribunes, * Coronels, and Captaines; he sent them home one after another, that these *Aires* might (by their Relations) bee dispersed among all the Nations and Armies of the *Orient*: for by that Course, he assured himselfe, that all men would most readily incline to him, when they saw that he did not insidiously inuade the Empire, but was wooed to accept it by the ardent Votes, and humble Suit of the Romans. And according to his expectation, they flocked to him from all Parts, beseeching and importuning him to take vpon him the Soueraigne Rule. Now the People of *Syria* are naturally light, and prone to Innovations; and were infinitely deuoted to *Niger*, both in regard he had ruled with singular Clemency, and had also entertained them with Shewes and Enterludes. For the *Syrians* are by Naturall Inclination, great louers of Sports; in so much, that the Inhabitants of *Antioch* (a mighty and flourishing City) spend (in a manner) all the

the yeare in Sportiue Recreations, either in the City or Suburbs. Thus *Niger* by continuall courting them with *Balls*, *Malques*, *Shewes*, and other pleasurable Pastimes, had chained their Affections to him. Which he well knowing, appointed all the Souldiers thereabouts, to come together at a Day prefixed; What time a great Number of People being likewise assembled, he thus spake to them from a high Seat purposely erected.

NIGER'S Speech to the Armie, &c.

Wltb what a gentle hand I haue ruled among you, and how circumspect and punctuall I haue beene in undertaking Actions of great import; I suppose is well knowne to all here present. Neither haue I bere assembled you of my owne bead,

head, out of ungrounded Hope or flattering Desire. But the Romans call vpon mee with incessant Clamours and Sollicitations, to lend them my * helping hand, and not permit so Ancient, Excellent, and Glorious an Empire to be basely Merchandized. Now as it were a high Point of Folly and Presumption to attempt so great an Enterprize, without iust Occasion intituling: So to refuse to aid them which implore our Helpe, might breed an Imputation of Cowardise and Treachery. The Reason therefore why I haue conuen'd you at this time, is to know your Mind, and what Course you thinke were best: being desirous of your Aduice and Assistance in this Weighty Affaire; which if it prosper well, will

redound

King our self.

redound to your Benefite, as well as mine. Nor are they vaine or meane Hopes, which solícite Us: but the Romane People, whom the Gods haue made Lords of the World: and the Imperiall Dignity, which is yet wa- uering and unsettled in the Person of any Man. Now the Certainty of this Designe is apparant, both by the Forwardnesse of them that craue our Succour, and for that there is none to make Opposition or Resistance. For they which are come thence, assure vs, that the Soldiers which sold the Empire to the Usurper, are not like to sticke to him, because hee hath broke his Credit with them, and was not able intred to performe his Bargaine. Shew therefore (I pray you) how you stand affected.

N

At

Niger elected.

At which words, the whole Army proclaimed him Emperour, and *Augustus*. Then vesting him in Purple Robes, and other Royall Abiliments (as that sudden Preparation would afford) they conducted him (with Fire carried before him) first to the Temples of *Antioch*, and then to his owne House; which now honouring as the Princes Palace, they adorned on the Out side, with all Imperiall Ornaments.

Embassadors.

Niger glad at his heart, of this good success, seeing the Romans and all others conspired to aduance him; made no doubt of carrying the Soueraignty. When this news flew abroad, presently all the Nations bordering on *Europe*, willingly submitted to him; sending their Embassadors to *Antioch*, as to the rightfull Emperour. Also the Kings and Princes beyond *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, sent to congratulate him; promising their aide if he needed. He returned them many Thanks, richly rewarded the Embassadors, and told them, he needed no Supplies, for he was sufficiently assured

of

Nigers security.

And Error.

of the Empire, and would reigne without Bloudshed. In which Confidence reposing, he beganne to be more remisse and negligent; solacing himselfe and the *Antiochians* with all variety of Sports, and Theatricall Delights, not regarding (which most concerned him) to take his Iourney to *Rome*, nor yet acquainting the *Illyrian* Armies, which he ought first of all to haue solicited and gained. But hee perswaded himselfe, that as soone as they heard of it, they would side with the Romans, and Easterne Forces. While he thus demeaned himselfe, and anchored on these *Shallowes*, and Vncertainties; the Bruit of these Occurrents was fresh among the *Pannonians*, *Illyrians*, and all the Garrisons, which were quartered on the Bankes of *Ister*, and the *Rhine*, to defend the *Roman* Empire from the Incursions of the adioyning Barbarians.

The President of the *Pannonians*, (for they all had but one Gouvernour) was *Seuerus*, an African by Descent, a braue active Man, but of a violent spirit, inured

Seuerus described.

to a strict and austere Life; easily enduring Labour and Travail; of a nimble Apprehension, and quick Resolution to execute what he determined. When he perceived by the Messengers, that the Roman Empire hang'd like a * Meteor in the skie, and was expos'd to him that could catch it; he contemned *Julian*, as an abject follower; and *Nigra* as a dull Plegmaticke. Hee was also much animated by certain Dreams, Oracles, and Presages; which are then best credited, when they are verified by the Event: those whereof, him self recorded in the Booke which he writ of his owne Life; and Presented them also to publike View in Statuary Representations; but his last and chiefest Dream, which rais'd him to the highest Hope, I may not omit. When *Severus* received Intimation of *Partinax* his Insurrection in the Empire, having sacrificed and sworne Allegiance to him; comming home at night, he fell asleep, and dream'd he saw *Partinax* mounted on a gallant Courser, adorned with Imperiall Troop, and him self carried him

* Meteor.

His Dreams.

him through the Sacred * Street at Rome. But when he was to enter the *Forum*, where the people, in time of * Democracy, had their most Solemn Assemblies; the Horle seem'd to throw *Partinax*, (with a terrible fall) to the Ground; and gently to suffer him (who stood next) to backe him; carrying him safely and steadily through the midst of the *Forum*; lifting up *Severus* on high; so that all the People saw him, and adored him. And there remains to this day in the very same place, a huge brass Image of that Dream. *Severus* thus encouraged, and perswaded he was call'd to the Empire by Divine Providence, resolv'd to try how the Soldiers were inclin'd; and first he countenanc'd a few Cononels, Tribunes, and Commanders; and taking Occasion to speake of the Roman Empire, shew'd how vilely it was prostituted; and that none of Spirit or Worth, were about to vindicate. He inveighed also against the Pretorian Bands at Rome, as Traitors, for violating their Oath, by spilling the Emperour

* Via sacra.

* Popular Rule.

- 10106 10106 10106

perour and Countrymans Bloud; saying, that it was fit they should pursue *Pertinax* his Murther with a sharpe Reuenge.

Now he well knew that the Memory of *Pertinax* was still fresh in the *Illyrian* Armies; which vnder his Command (in the Emperour *Marcus* time) had got many glorious Victories ouer the Germanes: and when he was President of * *Illyria*, he carried himselfe very brauely in the Wars; and ruled with such Wisdome and Moderation, as well shewed his rare sweet Spirit, and Generous Disposition. Wherefore they highly honoured his Memory, & were enraged against his Assassins: *Seuerus* embracing this Opportunity, did easily draw them to his Bent, by the Lustre of his faire and winning Propositions; pretending that he affected not the Empire, nor any Principality; but was only desirous to reuenge the Bloud of that famous Emperour. For the Natiues of that Region, as they are a Race of Men, mighty of Body & Limbe; tall Souldiers, and good Sword-men; so are they but of slow Wits; not easily

* *Sclauonia*.

Illyrians described.

easily discerning the Plot, if a man dealt subtilly or * politickly with them. Wherefore *Seuerus* hauing solemnly vowed to pursue *Pertinaxes* Murtherers; they belceued him, and submitting themselves, stilled him Emperour, and conferred vpon him the Soueraignty.

Hauing thus assured the Pannonians, he presently sent for the bordering Nations, & to the Presidents of the Northern Prouinces, which were vnder the Roman Regiment; whom he easily gained by great Hopes, & faire Promises. For he was the most cunning Dissembler in the World, and of a most winning Behaviour; not regarding to falsifie his Oath, to serue his Turne. He knew how to cogge, for his owne Advantage; and would readily vtter that with his Tongue, which he neuer meant in his Heart. Thus by his Courtly Letters hee wonne all the *Illyrians* to his Lure, and likewise the Prouinciall Presidents. Which done, he leued great Numbers of Souldiers from all Parts; assuming for his surname *Pertinax*; which he thought would

[*Spalat* was an *Illyrian*, and *Gondomar* (they say) did *Seuerus* ouer-reach him.]

Seuerus a darke and subtil Prince.

make

make him Gracious both with the Illyrians and Romans (for their worthy Esteem of him.) His Army being assembled, he thus spake to them from an high Throne:

SEVERUS his Speech to the Army.

Your zealous Veneration of the Gods (by whom you haue sworn) and your singular Devotion to your Emperours, doe well appeare by your Detestation of those heinous Crimes of the Pretorian Souldiers at Rome; which are Men, rather for Shew, than Service. For my owne part, having neuer till this present, entertained such high Hopes (for you know how Loyall I haue euer beene to my Liege Soueraignes) it is my chiefe

chiefe Care and Prayer to pursue and effect such Things, as may sort to your generall Contentment, and not permit the Roman Empire, which hath heretofore been administred with so great Glory and Honour, to bee thus embased. For albeit, under Commodus it suffered much, by reason of his youthfulness; yet the Errours of that Prince were shadowed with his high Nobility, and his Fathers Memory. His Faults deserve rather Commiseration, than Excoriation: since (for the most part) they were not to be imputed to him, but to his Flatterers, corrupt Counsellours, and Ministers of State. But when the Empire was inuested in that grave Senator (the Memory of whose Valour and Vertue, hath

to rathmore
since 1609
105

* Pertinax.

hath taken so deepe Root in your
 * Soules,) the Pretorians not endu-
 ring it, most cruelly butchered that
 brave Prince. And now (forsooth)
 there is * One, that hath bought the
 Empire of the World: but such a
 one, as is mortally hated of the Com-
 mons, (as you all beare) and not be-
 loved of the Souldiers, whom he hath
 deluded. But admit they were wil-
 ling to undertake his Defence; they
 are not comparable to you for Num-
 ber or Valour. Besides, you are
 better exercised in the Warres. For
 by your continuall Skirmishes with
 Barbarians, you have learned to
 endure all manner of Toile and Tra-
 uell; to scorne Heat and Cold; to
 wade througb frozen Rivers; to
 drinke puddled Waters; and to
 practise

* VVells.

* Julian.

Properties of
good Souldi-
ers.

practise your selues in Hunting. In a
 word, you haue attained to such rare
 Perfection in Martiall Discipline;
 that if any VVould, there is none A-
 ble, to stand against you. The Glory of
 a Souldier consists in Labour, not in
 Lazineesse or * Delicacie; wherewith
 the Stall-fed Pretorian Guards, be-
 ing ouer-pampered, will neuer bee
 able to abide your * Military * Stout;
 much lesse the Shocke. But if any mis-
 doubt the Syrian * Forces, hee may
 clearely collect, how im-puissant, and
 deuoted they are, that haue not da-
 red to stir out of their owne Countrey;
 nor haue had the heart to enter into
 Consultation of an Expedition to
 Rome; but loue rather to sit still,
 and entertaine Fortune by the Day;
 as holding it a sufficient Guerdon of

Hunting a Mi-
litary Exercise* No Excellen-
cie hath foun-
dation in Deli-
cacie.

* Boies.

* Vnder Nige-
Command.

an vnſure Soueraignty. The Syrians are better Scoffers than Souldiers; and more Mimicall than Martiall. But the Antiochians (they ſay) are chiefly deuoted to Niger. As for the other Countries and Cities, which as yet ſee none appeare, that is Worthy the Name of an Emperour, or Able to Govern the State, with Wiſdome and Courage, they doe meerely temporize and Collogue with him. But when they ſhall vnderſtand, that the Syrian Army hath made another Election, and ſhall heare of my Name, (which is neither vnknowne, nor inglorious among them, by reaſon of our Exploits there, when we were there Preſident) you well know they will not charge mee with Sloth, or Irreſolution: nor will they

they Offer to make Prooſe of your braue * Courage, and Martiall Fury; being ſo farre your Inferiours, for Goodlineſſe of Perſon, and Excellent Skill at your Weapon, when you come to Hand-strokes. Wherefore let vs inſtantly Aduance, and ſeize Rome, and the Imperiall Palace. Then may We with greater facility purſue our other Deſignes, taking our riſe from thence; and re-poſing all our Confidence in the Diuine Predictions; and went, in your Victorious Armes, and unmatched Valour.

Seuerus hauing thus ſaid, the Souldiers with great Cries of Ioy, proclaimed him Auguſtus, and Pertinax; making all poſſible Expreſſions of Loyalty and Alacrity.

Seuerus without further Procratiſtation, commands All to Arme themſelues as

* Territor.

* Occupation.

Seuerus proclaimed Emperour.

His Expedition to Rome.

lightly as they could, and proclaimes his Expedition to *Rome*. Then giuing them Donatiues, and distributing to euery one a competent Portion for a *Viaticum*; hee marches with high speed and haughty courage, resting no where, nor scarce suffering his weary Troopes to breathe them a little. Himselfe tooke as great paines as any, vsing as course Lodging, and hard Fate, as the meanest common Soldier; without any shew at all of Imperiall Pompe or Delicacy; which made the Soldiers much more affect him. For taking such infinite toile in his owne Person, it did so endear him to them, that they readily did whatsoever he commanded.

After he had marched through *Pannonia*, and was come to the Mountaines of *Italy*, preuenting Fame it selfe, by being seene as Emperour among them, before they had any Intelligence of his comming; all the Cities of *Italy* were in a fearefull Feauer, at the Approach of so great an Army. For the Italians hauing long since left all vse of Armes, and Military Discipline,

He surprizes
Italy.

pline, deuoted themselves to Agriculture and a peaceable course of Life. While the Romans were a Free State, and Generalls were elected by the Senate, *Italy* was still in Armes, and hauing conquered the Greeks and Barbarians, became Lords of the World; there being not an Angle of Earth, or Climate vnder Heauen, whither the Glory of the Roman Armes extended not. But when *Augustus* came to the Monarchie, his pacificall Gouernment induced a generall Lazinesse and desuetude of Martiall Exercises; for he kept only a certaine Number of Mercenary Bands in Pay, to guard the Roman Empire, at the vtmost Bounds thereof, which were naturally fortified with great Riuers, deepe Ditches, craggie Mountaines, and vast Delarts and Wildernesses. Wherefore, as soone as it was knowne, that *Seuerus* was comming with so mighty an Army, they were sore agast at that strange Newes, and not daring to stirre against him, went to meet him with Lawrells in their hands. But he making no longer Stay at any Place, than

either

either to sacrifice to the Gods, or speak to the People, posted away for Rome. When *Julian* was advertized hereof, he made account he was utterly undone. For understanding what a Numerous and Potent Army the Illyrians were, and having no hope in the People (to whom he was odious,) nor much in the Soldiers (whom he had galled) he made all the Money he could, by himselfe or his Friends, robbing the very Temples, and publike Treasuries, and gave all to the Soldiers to purchase their Good Will. But they returning small Thanks for his great Largesse, tooke it rather as a due Debt, than free Gift. *Julians* Friends counselled him to advance with his Army, and preclude the Alpine Straits. (Now the *Alpes* are exceeding high Mountaines, (such as we have none in these Parts) circulating *Italy* like a Wall; Nature adding to the Felicity of that Region, this Impregnable Fortification,) extending from the North to the South-Sea.) But *Julian*, not daring to budge forth of the City, sent to the Soldiers to beseech them

Julian in great
fear.

The *Alpes*.

to

to take Arms, and Exercise themselves, and make Trenches and Rampiers before the City; wherein he prepared all Military Ammunition, and caused all the Elephants (which he kept for Show and State) to be taught to endure Riders: supposing the Illyrians and their Horses would be started with the strange Shape and Bulke of these Beasts which they never saw before. All the City was now busie in providing Armes and warlike Furniture. But while *Julians* Soldiers got slowly to work, and scarce prepare for Warre, *Senar* is reported to be come already; who having appointed many of his Soldiers by several wayes, to disperse themselves, and enter secretly into *Rome*, they entered by sundry passages into the City (by Night) covering their Armour with Rusticall Habits, as if they had bene plaine Countrymen. And now was the Enemy in *Julians* Bosome, ere he was aware. When the People perceived this, being all amazed, and greatly dreading *Senars* Power, they beganne to incline to him, condemning *Julian*

Elephants
trained.

Senar's
stratagem.

Senar's
stratagem.

Senar's
stratagem.

P

lian

lion for a Dastard; and Niger for a Sluggo;
but commending Severus who was now
at hand. Whereupon Julian being at his
Wits end, and not knowing what to doe,
assembled the Senate, and their Leaders to
Severus, desiring to contract a League
with him, and to be made his Conſort in
the Empire. But when the Senators which
had agreed on this Gobshy ſaw, how
baldly, impetuous and devoted Deceit was,
they rejected him for a Redream, and whole-
ly refused to ſwore. For now, dayes after
when news was brought, that Severus was
now come in Perſon, all the Citizens be-
terly forſaking Julian, assembled in the
Guild-hall, by Command of the Con-
ſuls (who in ſuch doubtfull times have
charge of the Roman ſtand) where they
entered into Conſultation, what was beſt to
be done in that Eſtgent: Julian abiding (the
while) in the Palace, deploring the infor-
tunity, and humbly begging, that he might
abjure the ſoveraignty, and reſigne all
his Imperialty to Severus. But when the
Senate underſtood, that Julian was in ſuch
deſperate

Julian deſerted.

Julian deſerted.

Julian deſerted.

Authority of
Conſuls.

deſperate Horror, and that his Guards
(for Feare of Severus) had quite forſaken
him; they decreed his Death, and declar-
ed Severus ſole Emperour. Then ſent they
(as Commissioners) diuers of the chiefe
Magiſtracy, and prime Nobility, to render
to him all Imperiall Honours. The Execu-
tion of Julian was committed to one of the
Tribunes, who finding the wretched old
Man (that had bought his owne Ruine
with his Money) wholly deſerted and for-
lorne, ſlew him, as he was tearing his
haire, with abiect Lamentations. When Se-
verus underſtood the Senates Declaration,
and that Julian was ſlaine; he hoped to
doe greater matters, and laid a Train to
catch all the Pretorian ſouldiers that had
murdered Pertinax. He ſent therefore ſecrete
Letters to their Tribunes and Centurions,
promiſing them great Rewards, to per-
ſwade their Companies in the Citie, to ſub-
mit to his Mandates. Meane while, he
makes Proclamation, that all of them, lea-
ving their Armes in the Camp, ſhould come
forth like peaceable men, in ſuch habits as
they

No receſſe
gainſt Feare
(Dilecti Ma-
gis illuſtriſſima
Scolorum Re-
gina.)

Julian ſlaine.

Julian ſlaine.

Coronells and
Captaines.

Seuerus his they used when they attended the Empe-
Traine to take rour at temple shows and Sacrifices,
the Prætoris that they might be sworn to *Seuerus*, and
ans. that they should come cheerfully, because
 they were to be his Guard. The Soldiers
 crediting this Dict, and being all per-
 swaded by their Officers, lay aside all their
 Armes; and issue forth with Lawrell Bran-
 ches in their hands, in such Equipage as
 they were wont at some great Felicity.
 When they drew neere to *Seuerus*
 Camp, and it was told him they were all
 come, he commanded them to be brought
 in his Presence, as if he meant to welcome
 and entertain them with Honour. But
 when they came before his Throne, (with
 ibyfull Acclamations, upon a signal gi-
 uen at the Instant, they were all Apprehen-
 ded. For *Seuerus* commanded his Souldi-
 ers, that when they saw them assembled
 before him, expecting some high Faueur,
 they should presently wheel about them
 in Martiall Manner; yet not wound nor
 strike them, but only make a Ring, and
 hemme them in; presenting their lauels

and

and Pikes towards them, which they be-
 ing vnarmed, and but few in comparison
 of them, durst not resist so many Men at
 Armes. When *Seuerus* had thus impoun-
 ded them; with a strong voice, and furi-
 ous Spirit, he thus spake to them.

Seuerus had a
deepe soun-
ding Voice.

me to smit *Seuerus* his Speech to the
 Prætorian Guards.

On *Seuerus* by Experience, that
 he farre exceed you in Policy,
 Power and Number. You are easi-
 brought, and easily held. Now
 are you all at my Devotion, to doe
 what I please with you. Here you
 stand like a Herd of Beasts, ready
 to be sacrificed at my Becke. If you
 expect a Doome, or Death, responsi-
 ble to your Blacke Deeds, and De-
 testable Villanies; the World can-

not afford it. You have Barbarously
butchered that Venerable Father, and
Excellent Emperour, whom, as his
Guards, you ought to have defended.
You have most shamefully truckt for
Siluer, (as if it had beene some of your
owne Goods,) the most Glorious Ro-
mane Empire, which was ancient-
ly the Guerdon of Nobility, or Mi-
litar *Vertue. And now like base
Poltrones, "you have betrayed him
that was your Mercenary Souer-
raigne, not daring to guard or protect
him. For these inextinguishable Crimes,
you deserue a thousand Deaths, if you
had your Due. Now you see what
you are worthy to suffer. But I come
to imitate you, or to pollute my Hands
with your Bloud. Neither Justice
nor Equity permit, that you should
any

* *Aspicienda*
est.

" *And deinde.*

any longer be the Emperours Guard,
that thus have violated your Oath,
distained your selues with your Na-
turall Princes Bloud, and betrayed
the Trust and Confidence reposed in
you. Your Soules and Bodies (of my
Noblenesse) I am content to be-
stow upon you. But I command my
Souldiers to ungiirdle you; and di-
vest you of all Militarie Attire, and
Accoutrements, and send you away
stript: which done, I charge you all
to get you packing, farre from
Rome: for I here Decree, Vow,
and Swear, that if any of you bee
found within an hundred Miles of
the Citie, he shall die for it.

Having given this Charge, the Illyrian
Souldiers presently ranne to them, and
distaining them of their short Swords,
which

Prætorians
degraded.

(which were curiously wrought with Gold and Silver, and customarily worn at solemn Shewes,) they tooke from them their Belts, Scarffes, and other Military Ornaments, and rased off all their Clothes, leaving them stark naked.

Traytors betrayed.

When they saw themselves thus betrayed & taken with a Wile; there was no way but Patience. For what could a few naked men doe, against so many armed? They departed therefore, with heavy Cheere, yet glad, their Lives were given them, shrewdly repenting, that by leaving their Armes, they had subjected themselves to so foule and disgracefull a Doome. *Seuerus* vsed also another Policy; for doubting lest being degraded, they would desperately runne to their Campe, and resume their Armes, hee had sent before, some Troopes of his choicest and trustiest Soldiers, by secret wayes and passages, commanding them suddenly to seize their vacant Campe, and with their own Weapons to keepe them out, if they attempted to returne. Thus were these Assassins of *Peritine* punished.

Forth-

Forthwith *Seuerus* with his Army, arranged in Battell-Array, makes his Entry into Rome; the Romans being at first sight terribly afraid of him, for his Daring and Speedy Enterprise. Howbeit, the Peeres and Commons receiued Him with Laurels, who of all Men and Emperours, was the first, that without Bloud or Sweat, affected such rare Enterprises. Indeed, All things in him were Admirable; especially his high Wit, piercing Iudgement, Indefatigable Industry, happy, hopesfull Audacity in Great and Heroicall Attempts.

Seuerus enters Rome.

His Elog'.

After the People had welcommed him with their Acclamations, and the Nobles saluted him at the City Gates, he repaired to *Jupiters* Temple; where having sacrificed, he did his Devotions at the other *Fanes*, (as the Emperours were wont) and lastly, betooke himselfe to the Imperiall Palace. The next day he went to the Senate-house, where he made a smooth and plausible Speech; and then gave his *Hand to all the Company, professing, that his maine End in coming to the City, was to re-

* *Δεξιόδοξος*.
His Plausibility.

Q

venge

upon Pertinax's death, and to lay the Plot & foundation of an Optimacy: promising that none but those which were condemned by Law, should lose Life or Goods: that he would not tolerate Informers, that he would make a happy and flourishing State, and in all Things imitate Marcus, and not onely assume the Name, but the Minde of Pertinax. With these faire Promises he stroaked the Senators; most of them inclining to affect and belecue him. but some of the Elder and Sager sort, that better knew his Disposition, told them, in their Eare, that *he was a right Polititian, full of Trickes and Traines, and an exquisite Dissembler and Temporizer, for his owne Ends*: As afterwards it proued.

Seuerus intending but a short stay in Rome; gaue to the Commons a Magnificent Donatiue of Corne; and a Great Largesse to his Souldiers; selecting the Ablest among them for his Guard (instead of those which were degraded.) And now he prepares an Expedition to the Orient; where *Niger* lay rusting (all this while) and reuelling at *Antioch*; whom he hasted

to

to surprize ere he were awar, and take him vnprouided.

Commanding therefore his Souldiers to make ready for that Voyage, and recollecting all his Forces, hee adioyned to them all the Flowre of the Italian Youth; and gaue order, that the rest of the Armie in Illyria, should come downe to Thrace, and meet him on the Way. He provided also a great Fleet of Ships, and Prost all the Gallies of Italy; which he filled with Men and Armes, and sent them away; having massed together, with incredible speed a Dignitie Magasin of all manner of Provision and Ammunition. For he well knew, hee needed more than ordinary Forces against the Nations bordering on Europe, which were all vnder *Niger's* Command. Thus *Seuerus* gallantly prepare for the Warre. But withall, like a wise and prouident Man, hee shrewdly misdoubted the British Armie, consisting of great and brave Troopes of most Excellent Souldiers; whose General was *Albinus*; of very Noble and Honourable Discent, and borne to exceeding

His preparation
on for Warre.

* *avalas.*

He is afraid of
the Brittaines.

* *Maximilianus.*
Albinus Gouver-
neur of Bri-
taine.

Q 2

great

His Censure.

great Wealth and Possessions. Him he resolved to winne by Policie, lest otherwise being excited by his Riches, Noblenesse, Forces, and Renowne, (sharp and piquant motives to aspire to Soueraignty) he should attempt to ouertop him and seaze on Rome (which is not very far distant from Britaine) while himselfe were engaged in the Easterne Warres. Now his Bait to catch him, was by a glittering shew of Honour; for being a credulous man, and none of the deepest Politickes, hee presently beleeued the Calles and Protestations which hee sent him by Letter wherein he stiled him *Cæsar*, anticipating his Ambition, by communicating the Soueraigne Dignitie. In the said Countly and complemental Lines, hee besought him to be Protector of the Empire, which stood in great need of so Noble and braue a young Gallant; as for himselfe, hee was now growne old and Coward, and his children were but Infants. *Albinus* easily gaue Credit to him, and willinglyooke the Honour vpon him; being glad he attained his Desire, without Battell

or

or further Danger. To giue the more Glosse to his Intentions, *Seuerus* acquainted the Senate with the Passages; commanding also Coines to be stamped with his Image, as also his Statues to be erected; with all other Imperiall Honours; the better to blanch his Designs. Which hauing with high Wildome performed, & so lockt *Albinus* in Britaine, that there was no feare of him; he gathered all the Illyrian Forces into one Body, and now all things being in readinesse, he leads his Army directly against *Niger*. What were his Stations by the Way; what Speeches he made to euery City, what frequent Prodigies * by Diuine * Prouidence appeared; as also what Countries he marched through, what conflicts he had, and how many were slaine on either side; many Historians haue related, and Poets especially haue largely dilated; making *Seuerus* Acts the Argument of their Workes. But my intendment is to compile a History of the Acts of many Emperours, reigning in the compasse of 70 yeares, which I certainly * know to be true.

Q3

I

He is stiled *Cæsar*, by *Seuerus*.

* M. B. de la
* 1214.

Herodian writes
a History of
seuentic yeares.
* 193 to 211.

I shall therefore deliuer part of the chiefeſt
and choiceſt Actions of *Seuerus*, not flat-
tering or faining more than was performed

(like the Writers of that Time) nor yet

ſuppreſſing ought that is wor-
thy to be knowne or

recorded.

The End of the Second Booke.

The End of the Second Booke.

The End of the Second Booke.

The End of the Second Booke.

The End of the Second Booke.

The End of the Second Booke.

The End of the Second Booke.

The End of the Second Booke.

The End of the Second Booke.

The End of the Second Booke.

The End of the Second Booke.

The End of the Second Booke.

The End of the Second Booke.

The End of the Second Booke.

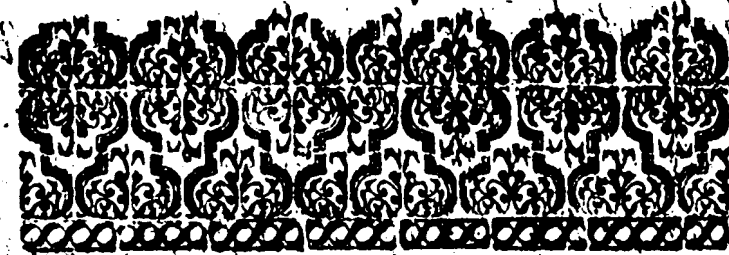
The End of the Second Booke.

The End of the Second Booke.

The End of the Second Booke.

The End of the Second Booke.

The End of the Second Booke.



HERODIAN

His

IMPERIALL HISTORY.

THE THIRD BOOKE.

The Contents.

Niger prepares for Warre. He
fortifies Mount Taurus, and
Byzantium. *Æmilianus* his Ge-
nerall, defeated. *Seuerus* Policy.
He assaults Mount Taurus. *Moore*s
described. *Alexandria*. Battell be-
twixt *Seuerus* and *Niger*. *Niger*
beheaded.

beheaded. *Seuerus Plots against Albinus. His Speech against him. His strange Winter-march. Albinus sailes out of Britanny, and fights with Seuerus. The Britaines fight brauely, and beat Seuerus off his horse: They winne the first Battell: They disranke, and are routed. Albinus beheaded. Seuerus his Glorious Elogy. He makes two Vicegerents in Britany. His Cruelty and Couetousnesse. Secular Games euery three hundred yeare. Seuerus his Expedition into the East. He besieges Atræ, and is repulsed. His strange Fortune. He surprizes the Parthian King. He enters Rome in Triumph. His Sonnes Dissentions. Plautian a Mighty Favourite. His Treason, strangely detected. He is cut in peeces.*
Seue-

Seuerus instructs his Sons. Newes from Britany. Seuerus his Expedition thither. Description and Elogie of the Picts or Scots. Seuerus dies for grieve. Antonines Cruelty. Seuerus Reliques. Antonine and Geta saile out of Britany.



N the former Booke, wee haue related the Murther of *Pertinax*, the Slaughter of *Julian*, *Seuerus* his Expedition to Rome; and lastly his Preparations against *Niger*. As loone as *Niger* (who little expected such Newes) vnderstood that *Seuerus* had seized Rome; that the Senate had proclaimed him Emperour; and that all the Illyrian Army, and other Forces were comming against him by Sea and Land; being extremely startled, he warnes all the Vicegerents of the Prouinces, to set strong Guards at all Ports and Passages; and
R sends

Niger prepares for Warre.

sends for Aid, to the Parthian, Armenian, and Atrenian Kings. The *Armenians* answer was, that he would be Neutrall and reserve his owne Forces to defend himselfe, if *Seuerus* assailed him. The *Parthian* promises to write to his Nobles, to levy Souldiers: (as his manner was in time of Warre:) for the *Parthians* haue no ordinary standing Armies, nor any Souldiers in continuall Pay. From the *Atrenians* came a Band of Archers, sent from King *Barsemius*, who then reigned in those Parts. The Grosse of his Army he made vp of the Souldiers which he had with him; most of the Country youthes, but especially of the *Antiochians*, either out of their Leuitie or Loue to *Niger*; more boldly than wisely flocking vnto him. The Straights and Precipices of Mount *Taurus*, he fortified with strong Walls and Munitions; accounting that impassable Place, would be a Barricado to blocke vp the way to the Orient. For *Taurus* lifting vp his Ridge betwene *Cappadocia* and *Silicia*, diuider the Eastern and Northern Nations. Hee put

also

according to the
antient story

Mount *Taurus*
fortified.

also a Garrison in *Byzantium*, the chiefest and mightiest City of *Thrace*, flourishing at that time in Strength and Wealth; for being situate in the narrow Proponticke Sea, it reaped equall benefit by Water and Land; from the first, Impost and Fish, from the latter, Corne and Fruit; as hauing a large and fertile Territory. This strong City he preoccupates to preuent the Passage of *Seuerus* Fleet, which was to saile out of *Europe* into *Asia*, through that narrow channell. The City was compassed with a huge strong Wall, of squared Millstones, so curiously cemented, that it seemed to be an entire worke made by Nature, rather than Art: yea the very Ruines and Rubbish (which yet appeare) shew the maruellous skill of them that built it, and the stupendious strength of those that dismantled it.

Byzantium now
Constantinople.

In this manner did *Niger* order his affaires, with singular Prudence and Prouidence (as he imagined.) *Seuerus* on the other side, slackt not, but incessantly marched with his Army. And being aduertized that *Byzantium* was well manned

unbattered

R 2

and

Emilianus Ni-
gers Generall.

Defeated by
Seuerus.

* Ανεπικύω.

and strongly fortified, he turns his course
to *Cyzicum*. *Emilianus* Lieutenant of *Asia*,
to whom *Niger* had committed the Man-
nage of the Warre, and chiefe command;
hearing that *Seuerus* was marching, leads
all the Forces which he had leauied, or were
sent by *Niger*, directly to *Cyzicum*. When
the Armies met on both sides, after diuers
bloody Battells in those parts, *Seuerus* at
last was Master of the Field, a great Num-
ber of *Nigers* Souldiers being routed,
slaine, and put to flight. Which successe
mightily encouraged the *Illyrians*, and the
* *Eastlings*. But many were of Opini-
on, that from the beginning, *Niger* was
betrayed by *Emilian*; for these Reasons.
Some say, he chued *Niger*, disdaining, that
he, who was but his Successour in *Syria*,
should now be his Superiour, Emperour,
& Soueraigne. Others suppose, that he was
thereto perswaded by his Childrens Let-
ters, who besought him to take care of
their Safety: for *Seuerus* having found them
at *Rome*, put them in Hold, out of deepe
Policy, and early Providence. And it was
but

Α

Commodus

Commodus, his manner to retaine with him
their Children, whom he sent to be Lieute-
nants of Prouinces, as Pledges of their Al-
legeance, and Fidelity. Wherefore *Seuerus*
(like a vigilant man) at his first Designe-
ment to the Empire in *Julians* time, sent
secretly for his Children out of the City, lest
they should be afterward seized on. And at
his coming to *Rome*, he instantly appre-
hended all the Children of the Presidents,
and other chiefe Captaines and Comman-
ders that ruled in *Asia*, or the East, carrying
them with him as Prisoners, thereby to in-
duce their Fathers to reuolt from *Niger*,
(for their preservation) or if they conti-
nue firme to him, to let them know, that
by killing them, he could be reuenged on
them at his pleasure.

Seuerus his Po-
licie.

Nigers Souldiers being ouerthrowne
at *Cyzicum*, fled a maine; some to the Arme-
nian Mountains, others through *Asia*, and
Galatia, halting to Mount *Taurus*, to get in-
to that strong Hold. *Seuerus* Army marche
through the Countrey of *Cyzicum* to the next
Region, of *Bythinia*. When it was Famed,
R 3 that

that *Seuerus* was Victor, suddenly all the Cities in those Parts, fell to deadly Feud; not so much for Loue or Hate to either Emperour, as out of a mortall Antipathy, and implacable Enmity one to the other. And this was anciently the Fault of the Greeks, who by their intestine Broiles and Conspiracies, to extirpate the most eminent Men, haue vterly vndone *Greece*: whose inhabitants (by their old Grudge, and ciuill Disasters) first became Vassalls to the Macedons; and then Slaues to the Romans: the same Heart-burning and spightfull Emulation continuing in the best Cities to our Time. Wherefore after these things hapned at *Cyzicum*, the Citizens of *Nicomedia* in *Bitbynia*, reuolted from *Niger*, to *Seuerus*, promising him (by their Embassadors) to receiue his Army, and assist him in all things. But the Citizens of *Nicaea*, out of their Malignity to them, tooke *Niger*'s part, and entertained his Souldiers, which either fled thither, or were sent to defend *Bitbynia*. Out of these two Cities, (as severall Camps) the Ar-

mies

mies of both sides issuing, fought againe; but after a terrible Battell, *Seuerus* got the Victory. From thence the Remaines of *Niger*'s Forces fled to the Straits of Mount *Taurus*, to defend those Fortifications. *Niger* hauing left there as many as he thought sufficient to make good the Place, returns to *Antioch*, to raise more Men and Money. Meanewhile, *Seuerus* Army passing through *Bitbynia*, and *Galatia*, marcht into *Capadocia*; and there beganne to assaile the Fortification. But they met with no small Difficulties; for the passage was extreme rough and Craggie, and the Enemy which was on the Walls, and ouer their heads, rumbled downe stones vpon them, and fought brauely, a few men seruing to repell a great Number. For the Ascent was exceeding strait, being defended on the one side with a huge steepe Mount, on the other with a wonderfull Precipice, downe which fell continuall Cataracts from the top of the Mountains. *Niger* had also made there a strong Fort to barre their Entrance on

euey

Mount *Taurus*
assailed.
the Army.
the Army won
the City.

the Mount
the Army won

every side. During this Assault in *Cappadocia*, there arose Mutinies vpon the like Grounds and Grudges as aforesaid. For *Laodicea* in *Syria* (in despite of *Antiochia*) and *Tyris* in *Phoenicia* (repining at the *Berythians*) when they heard of *Nigers* Discomfiture, defaced his Images, and proclaimed *Seuerus* Emperour: which *Niger* (then at *Antioch*) vnderstanding, though (otherwise) of a milde Disposition, yet stung with those opprobrious Injuries and Defections, sends against both the Cities all the **Mauritanian* Darters that hee had, and part of his Archers, charging them to kill all afore them, and to sacke and burne the Cities. The *Moores* (who are naturally bloody and desperate, regarding neither Death nor Danger) suddenly inuading the *Laodiceans*, put them all to the Sword and destroyed their Towne. Thence marching to *Tyre*, they first pillag'd it, and then cruelly slaughtering the Inhabitants, set it on a bright blaze. While this passes in *Syria*, and *Niger* is leuying new Supplies, the *Seuerians* persist in their Assailement of the

* *Mauritania*,
now *Eex* and
Matoce.

The *Moores*
described.

Fort

Fort of Mount *Taurus*, but with much wanne-hope, and great discouragment; for it was an impregnable Worke, and naturally defended with the Mount, and Precipice. Being quite wearied, and their Enemies now secure; extraordinary Stormes and Snowes, fell suddenly in the Night, (for in *Cappadocia*, and especially at Mount *Taurus*, Winters are extreme rough) accompanied with a vehement and impetuous Torrent; which being checkt by the Fortification, became more furious and violent. At last, Nature vanquishing Art; and the Wall yeelding to the Deluge, the Floud (having sap't the Foundation, which was made in haste, and not so carefully as was requisite) bore downe all before it, and made an exceeding great Breach: which the Defendants perceluing, and fearing that when the Waters were downe, they should be surprized by the Enemy, they all quit the Place, and fled. With this Accident the *Seuerians* were infinitely cheered and animated, (as led by Diuine Prouidence) and seeing also the

S

Guardi-

Guardians of the Mount were fled; they easily scaled it, and entered Cilicia. When Nican heard these Tidings, he gathered a vast Army of undisciplined and inexperienced Souldiers; and marching with maine speed, was followed with huge Numbers of People, and almost all the Youth of Antioch, who expected great Alacrity, but were not comparable to the Illyrians, for Valour or Experience. At the Bay of Issus the Armies met, in a goodly spacious Plaine, which lying under a row of Hills, Theatrical was extended all along the Sea coast; Nature having here made (as it were) a Stage for a Battell. In this very same place they say that Darius was overthrowne and taken by Alexander in the last Great Battell; the * Northerne Men then also vanquishing the Eastern. The City Alexandria (built on a Hill) the Trophy and Monument of that Victory, yet remains; and the Brazen Image of him that so named it. Now it fell out that the Hosts of Seleucus and Niger, did not only encounter in the said Place, but also

* A City called by Alexander Nicopolis for his Victory there.

* In Nature the Northern Regions are most Martiall. Alexandria.

with like Fortune [to the other:] For on both sides were they ready to fight in the Evening, not sleeping all Night for Care and Feare. At Sun-rising the Generalls encouraged their Souldiers, who assailed each other with incredible Fury; as accounting that, the last Battell Conflict; and that Fortune would there designe the Emperour. After a long and grim Fight, there being on each side so great Slaughter, that the Rivers which ran through the Plaine, sent much more Bloud than water into the Sea; at last the Orientalls turned their Backs and fled, the Illyrians pursuing them to the Sea (where they thrust them in with wounds) and to the Hill-tops, where they slew them, together with a great Number of People assembled there out of the adjoining Townes and Villages, as Spectators of the Battell; supposing they were safe in that high Ground. Niger being bravely mounted, posted with a few of his followers to Antioch; where the People flying every way, and piteously bewailing their Souldiers and Brethren, he also

The Battell betwixt Seleucus and Niger.

also grew desperate, and betooke himselfe to flight; but being found hid in a Suburban house, by the Horsemen that pursued him, his Head was struck off.

Niger beheaded.

This End had *Niger*, being brought to that Disaster, by his dull protracting of Time; though otherwise he were (as they say) in his publike and private Carriage not Culpable.

Niger being slaine, *Severus* presently put to death all his Friends and Partisans, whether Voluntaries, or Compelled to assist him. Yet he pardoned the Souldiers which were fled (for feare) to the Barbarians beyond the River *Tygris*; and received them into Faueur. For great Numbers of them retired into those parts, whereby it came to passe, that the Barbarians were afterwards more able to encounter the Romans in set Battell; their manner of Fight before that time, being only with Bowes and Arrows on horsebacke, without compleat Armour; having no skill to vse Sword, or Lance; but clad with thinne loose Garments, they shot their Arrows

Arrows (most part) backwards, flying from their Enemies. But when diuers Roman Souldiers, and (among them) many Armourers, which fled thither, had set up their Rests there, the Barbarians feared not only to vse Armes, but also to make them.

Severus having settled the Affaires of the Orient to his owne Contentment, had a strong Desire to invade the Dominions of the Arabian & Parthian Kings, who were (both) *Niger's* Confederates. But deferring that till another time, he cast about, how he might now establish the Roman Empire on himselfe and his Sonnes. For *Niger* being taken away, the only Rub that remained was *Albinus*, whom he held to be altogether unprofitable for his Purpose, & incompatible to his Designes. Besides, the Report was, that his *Cæsarian* Title had had so putt up his Spirit, that he began to fare like an Emperour; and that many of the chiefe Peeres of the Senate had secretly writ to him to hasten to Rome, while *Severus* was absent, and elsewhere

ingaged. And indeed the Nobles were most devoted to *Albinus*, who was very Honourably descended; and reputed to be of a sweet and generous Disposition. Of all which passages *Seuerus* having got intelligence, resolved not instantly to make open Warre against him; or proclaim him his Enemy, (there being no just Cause or Colour for it) but to try if he could make him away by Treachery. Wherefore he dispatches to him divers crafty Persons, which (as Posts) used to carry the Emperours Letters and Missives, giving them in Charge, that after they had publicly delivered the Packets, they should desire him to vnderstand some further secrets in private; and when he was apart from his Guard, suddenly to fall vpon him and kill him. Moreover, he delivered to them divers sorts of Reasons, to be ministred to him by some of his Captains or Cup-bearers, if they could persuade them. But *Albinus* his Friends mistrusting *Seuerus*, gave him many Cautions to beware him as a fraudulent and insidious Person. For

Seuerus plots
against *Albinus*.

boagani

2

his

his Fame was foully blasted by his ill dealing with *Niger*s Captaines; whom having vnder-wrought by their Children (as wee formerly shewed) to betray *Niger*s Affaires, when he had made vse of their Service, and attained his owne Ends, he slew both Them and their Children. By these Actions of his, they manifested to him his dangerous Disposition. *Albinus* thereupon doubled his Guards, and admitted not to his presence any Messengers from *Seuerus*. In this he had aid by his Military Fauchin, and was also searcht lest he had any other Weapon in his Bosome. And now were *Seuerus* his Posts arrived at *Albinus* his Court, where delibering their letters openly, they besought him to step aside to heare some speciall Secrets. *Albinus* suspecting them, commands them to be apprehended. Then, secretly torturing them, he learnt but all the Treachery; and punished them to Death; And made Preparation against *Niger* as a professed Enemy. Which *Seuerus* vnderstanding, being of a violent Spirit and irrefull Nature, hee no longer

* In Britaine.

lenger concealed his Enmities, but assembling all his Army, spake thus.

SEVERUS his Speech
against ALBINUS.

L Et none, reflecting on my former Actions, tax mee of Lewetic, Trecherie, or Ingratitude towards my reputed Friend. I could doe no more than Associate him (by a firme League) in the Imperiall Government: which some Man would hardly doe to his owne Brother. Yea, I communicated to him That, which you conferred on mee Alone. But Albinus unworthily requites these extraordinary Favours which I haue heaped upon him. For he is now vp in Armes against Vs, contemning your Valour. and not regarding

ding his League with Me. For hee seekes with insatiable Desire, to ingrosse That with his owne Perill, which he securely enioyed by a peacefull Participation. Neither doth he reuere the Gods, by whom he hath so oft sworne; nor respects he your Travells, which with so great Glory and Courage you haue undertaken for Vs Both. For the Fruits of your happy Successse, extended likewise to him. Yea, had he continued Faithfull to Vs; We had done him Greater Honour, then was yet imparted to him. Now as to doe ill Offices, is an Act of Injustice; So, not to redresse a Wrong, is un-manly. In our Wars against Niger, our Quarrell was not so Just, as Necessary. For he sought not to embrace the Imperiall Dignity

T inuested

* ὁρῶν πρὸς
παρ.

* Ἀντιστ.

invested in Our Person; but the Empire lying then at Stake, and being yet Litigious; Both of Us with Equall Ambition, fairly Wrestled for it. But Albinus violating LEAGUES and OATHS; makes Choice rather to be an Enemy than a Friend, and to wage Warre rather than continue in Amity; being Advanced by our Meere Bounty, to that Eminent Honour, which anciently appertained to the Sacred Branches of the Imperiall Stemme. Wherefore as we have formerly Ennobled him with Great and Glorious Advancements: So now we hold it meet, to Chastise his Ignoble Treachery, by Force of Armes. And for his poore Army of Illanders; it is impossible it should resist your Praise.

* The Title of
caesar implied
Heire-Appa-
rantic.

* BRILL.

sance. For since you Alone, by your owne Valour, and Admirable Promesse, have won so many Battells, and conquered all the Orient: Who can doubt but that now by Accessse of so many Gallant Men at Armes, (for here are almost All the Roman Forces) you shall easily rout a small Number, led by One that hath neither Wit nor Courage? For who knows not his Voluptuary Life, fitter for a Swine than a Souldier? Let vs therefore Brauely Advance against Him, with our wonted Alacrity and Magnanimity: banning the Gods for our Guides, whom he hath Dishonoured with Perjuries, and calling to minde the many Trophies we have erected, which hee so highly scornes.

Severus having thus said, the whole Army proclaimed *Albinus* Traytor, but making full Demonstration of their Loyall Zeale to Him, by their Acclamations; they mightily encouraged him and made him wondrous confident. Whereupon rewarding them with magnificent Donatives, he took his Journey against *Albinus*. With all, he sent certaine Troops to invest *Byzantium*, which was yet held by *Nigers* Soldiers that fled thither. Which City was afterward taken by Famine, and razed to the Ground; insomuch, that the Theaters, Thermes, and all the Splendour and Glory thereof, being quite defaced, it was reduced to a mean Village, and given in Vassallage to the Perinthians; as *Antioch* in like sort, to the *Laodiceans*. Further, he consigned great Summes of Money for the reedifying of the Cities spoiled by *Nigers* Soldiers. And now marching without any * Intermission, or Regard to Holy dayes, or Workerdayes, Heat or Cold, (all being alike to him) he would oft in that Stormy Season, goe bare headed on the

Byzantium invested.

* The Fate of
Rebel: now,
S. Mary Village

* *Severus*
Watchword
was *Laboremus*.

His Winter-
march.

on the tops of Mountains, when it sharply snowed; to excite his Souldiers to Patience and Alacrity, by his owne Example; so that they cheerefully endured all Difficulties, not so much for feare of Law, as in a generous Emulation of their Royall Chiefe. He sent also a strong Army to seize the Alpine Straits, and to forelay the Passages into *Italy*. *Albinus*, who (this while) pursued his Pleasures, and was supinely negligent, when he heard that *Severus* was marching with such Expedition; being startled with the horror of the Newes, presently sailes out of *Britaine*, and disembarks his Army in the opposite Coast of *Gallia*; where he sends his Mandates to all Gouvernours of the adjacent Provinces, to furnish Him with Money and Victuals. They which did so, dealt verie vnadvisedly, for they were plagued for it, when the Warre was ended; But they that refused (rather by Good Hap, than Fore-sight) saved themselves: the Event and * Fortune of the Warre determining who were the wiser. *Severus*

Albinus sailes
out of *Britaine*.

* The Fate of
Rebel: now,
S. Mary Village

Battell betwixt
Senerus and
Albinus.

Britans Elogie.

* ἀνδρῶν τε καὶ
δυνάμει ποικίλῃ.

* πολὺν πρὸς
πρῶτον.

The Britans
beat the bra-
uest Martialist
of the world.

* Hymnes sung
to Mars before
Battell: to
Apollo after
Victory.

Gallica Forces being entered Gallia, there were first, certaine light Skirmishes in diuers Parts; but at last, they fought a pitcht Field, neere the great and rich City *Lugdunum*; where *Albinus* immuring him- selfe, sent forth his Army to fight. The Encounter was exceeding fierce; and doubt- full it was a great while, which way the Victory would incline; For the BRITANS were no whit inferiour to the Illyrians in * Manhood, or Martiall Fury. Both Armies fighting with equall Brauery, it was hard to say, which would get the better. Diuers Historians (of that time) which more re- garded Verity than Partiality, report that *Albinus* his Army was * F A R R E S V P E- R I O R in that Part, which was encoun- tred by *Senerus* in Person, with his Batta- lion; in so much, that H I M S E L F E WAS P Y T T O F L I G H T, A N D B E A T E N O F F H I S H O R S E, Y E A F O R C E D T O T H R O W O F F H I S I M P E R I A L L C L O A K E, A N D H I D E H I M S E L F E. While the Britans follow the Chase, chanting out their * Pa- ans, as Victors; *Lois* one of *Senerus* Commanders,

Commanders, suddenly chargds them with fierce and fresh Troopes. Hee was harshly censured, as if he purposely kept aloofe, and reserved that choite Regiment to get the Empire to himselfe: intending then to take the Field; when he heard *Senerus* was slaine. Which Suggestion, was fortified by the Event. For when *Senerus* had settled all things to his owne minde, and secured his Estate, he richly rewar- ded all his other Chieftaines; but remem- bring how *Lois* had tormented him, he put him to Death, as he deserved. These things were done afterwards. Now when *Lois* came in View (as aforesaid) with a new Supply, the *Senerians* took heart againe, and remounting *Senerus* on his horse backe, put on his Purple Surcoat. The *Albinians* that (presuming they were Masters of the Field) had disbanded themselves, being suddenly and furiously charged by fresh Companies, after a short resistance, fled; the *Senerians* following the Execution to the City gates. The Number of the slaine, and captiues, on either side, is differently rela- ted

* A Military
Mantle.

* So the dis-
ranking of the
English lost All
to the Norman.

red by the Writers of that Age. The City
* *Lugdunum* was sackt and burnt by the
Seuerians; who hauing tooke *Albinus*,
strucke off his head, and presented it to
Seuerus.

* Lyons in
France.
Albinus be-
headed.

* Monuments
of Victory
visuall in those
times.

Thus raised betwixt most stately Tro-
phies; One, in the East; and Another, in
the North; so that Nothing is compara-
ble to *Seuerus* Conflicts, or Conquests;
either for Multitude of Forces, Commo-
tion of Countries, Number of Battells,
Length of Iournies, or Speed in Marches.
I confesse, *Casars* Acts against *Pompey* (the
Souldiers being *Romans* on either side)
were very great: as also those of *Augustus*
against *Antony* and *Pompeys* Sonnes; and
likewiseth exploits of *Sylla* and *Marius*
in the Ciuill and Romaine Warres. But for
ONE MAN to haue the killing of
THREE ENTHERONIZED (E.M.
PERORS) to surprize the Pretorian
Troop at Rome bys Finnesse of Wit;
to kill One Emperour in the Palace Roy-
all; to dedicate Another, that is digned in the
Orient; and was elected Emperour by the
Romans;

Seuerus the
greatest Con-
querour, of
the World
the first of his
line.

Romans; and to vanquish a Third, that
was a *Cæsar*, of Great Nobility and Depen-
dencie; you shall hardly finde the like.
To this End came *Albinus*, hauing enioy-
ed his fatall Dignity but a short time.

And now was *Seuerus* full charged
with Wrath and Indignation against *Albi-
nus* friends at Rome; whither he sent his
Head; commanding it to bee publicly
affixt on the Gallows. And in the Let-
ters which he writ to the People of his
Victories, he added this *Postscript*; that *He*
there sent them his Head, strictly charging
that it be publicly set on the Gibbet; so the
end, they might perceiue by that Token of his
Wrath, how highly he was offended with them.

Hauing Ordered the State of *Britaine*,
and diuided the Gouvernement of the Pro-
uince, into two * President-ships; and ha-
uing likewise composed the Gallick Aff-
aires to his owne Minde, and slaine all *Albi-
nus* Friends and Partners, whether Vol-
untary or Forced; he set forward towards
Rome; leading all his Army thither, to
strike the greater Terror. His lusty be-
lieved that he should see the

Two Vice-
Royes in *Brit-
taine*.

* *Imperiall*.

ing ended, [with extraordinary Speed (as his manner was.) and being full of Fury against *Albinus* Friends, that survived; hee enters *Rome*. The Commons met him with Laurels, and receiued him with all Honour, and Ioyfull Acclamation. The Senators also congratulated him, though many of them were extremely afraid, that he would not pardon them; being so apt by reason of his Naturall Inhumanity, to oppress men on the least Occasion; and hauing now so probable Pretences to question them.

^{* impietas} *Seneca* hauing visited *Iupiters* Temple, and performed other ^{* impietas} Sacred Rites, went to his Royall Palace, and in honour of his Victories, bestowed great Store of Corne on the Citizens, and much Coine on his Soldiers; to whom hee granted many Privileges, which formerly they had not. For he first augmented their Proportion of Wheat, and permitted them to wear Gold Rings, and cohabite with their Wiues; all which, were reputed, vnderly dissonant from Military Austerity, and Martiall Dispositions. But he was the first that al-

tered their strong and manly Diet, and subuerted all Order, Discipline, and Obedience to Gouvernours; by teaching them to hunt after Money, and vsing them to delicate Fare. Hauing made these Ordinances, (after his owne Fancy) he entered the ^{* Or Parlia-} Senate-house, where ascending his Royall ment-house. Throne; he made a bitter Inuective against *Albinus* Friends, producing the secret Letters of some of them, which he found in his Cabanets; and obiecting to others, that they had honoured him with the richest Presents: to these, that they had Fauoured his Easterne ^{* Niger.} Enemies: to those, ^{Senatus Cru-} that they were *Albinus* Fauourites. Then ele and Coue- he put to Death all the chiefe Peeres of the tounesse. Senate; and slew without Mercy all that were of Great Estate and Nobility in the Prouinces: pretending to suppress his Enemies; but Spurred on (indeed) by Extreme Auarice; wherein he exceeded all the Emperours. For, as in haughtinesse of Spirit, hardnesse to endure Labour, and skill in Martiall Affaires, he was equall to the Worthiest: so was he an vnmeasu-

rable Lover of Money; Which he accumulated by cruell Slaughters, vpon the least Cause or Colour; ruling his Subiects rather by Feare than Love. Nevertheless, he affected Popular Lustre, by frequent exhibiting most Stately Shewes (of all sorts) where were oft slaine an hundred Beasts brought from strange Countries. He distributed also magnificent Donatiues to the People, and ordained a Triumphall * *Agon*, sending for Actors and Champions from all Parts. I haue scene (in his Time) Shewes of all kindes of Pageants in all the Theaters, at once; as also Processions and Vigils (like *Ceres* Mysteries.) These were then called *Secular Solemnities*, because they were celebrated (as they said) after the Terme of three Ages or Generations. What time, Bedles went thorow *Rome* and *Italy*, to inuite All to come and see those * *Shewes* which they had neuer scene before, nor should euer after see: Intimating thereby, that the Inter-space betwixt the past and present Celebritie, exceeded the longest Age of Men.

His Popularity

* Game, or Exercise of Manhood.

Secular Games

V. Alex. ab Alex. Gen. di. 1. 6. c. 19.

* Instituted in honor of *Apollo* and *Diana*, (the *Sunne* and *Moonne*.)

Hauing

Hauing staied a sufficient time at *Rome* (where he associated his Sonnes in the Soueraigntie, and declared them Emperours) considering, that his former Victories were ouer his owne Countreymen and the Roman Armies, (for which Cause hee forbore Triumph) he determined to get him selfe Honour by a Glorious Conquest of the Barbarians. His Pretext was, to be reuenged on *Barsenis* the *Atrenian* King, for his Confederacie with *Niger*. Whereupon he led his Army into the Orient, and as he was about to enter *Armenia*, the King of the *Armenians* sent him Money, Presents, and Hostages; humbly intreating, to contract a League of Amitie with him. *Seuerus* seeing all things happen to his Minde in *Armenia*, marches against the *Atrenians*. But *Augarus* King of the *Ostro-*ns submitted himselfe to him, and hauing assured his Homage, by deliuering his Children for Pledges, sent to his Aid a goodly Band of Archers. *Seuerus* hauing passed the Region lying betwixt the Rivers and the Country of the *Albenians*, made

Seuerus his second Expedition into the East.

Archers.

Siege of Atr.

made a Road into *Arabia Felix*, where grow those odorate Herbs which wee use for Spicerie and Frankincense. Having destroyed many Cities and Villages, and wasted the Countrey, hee entered the Land of the *Atrians*, and beleaguerd *Atra*, a City mounted on the Top of an exceeding high Hill, strongly walled and fortified, well manned & full of excellent Archers. *Seuerus* Army encamping before it, made many furious Assaults, striving with all their strength to master it: to which purpose, they assailed the Walls with all sorts of Warlike Engines; pretermittting no kinde of Inuasion. But the *Atrians* made a braue Resistance, and with Shot and Stones from aboue, did much hurt to the *Souerians*. They filled also earthen Vessels with small Fowles, and venomous Beasts, which being cast among them, and lighting on their Faces, and other open parts of their Bodies, crawled all ouer them, and secretly stung and tormented them. Moreouer, they were not able to endure the stifling Aire of that extreme hot

hot Climate, which cast them into strange Calentures; so that the most part of the Army died rather by that meanes, than by the Enemy. Whereupon, the Souldiers growing desperate at that lucklesse Siege, (where the *Romans* lost more than they got) *Seuerus* discamped, and departed without Effect, lest all his Men should perish: being much grieved that the successe of the Siege was not answerable to his Desire. For having beene won to get the Victory in all Encounters, he now reputed himselfe overcome, because hee could not overcome. But Fortune soone after smiled on him, and aduanced his Designes; so that he lost not all his Labour, but fared better than he expected. For his Army being imbarqued, was not brought to the Roman Territories, (as he intended) but was hurried by the violent Streame to the *Parthian* Bankes, nor many dayes journey from *Ctesaphon*; where was the Royall Palace of the King of *Parthia*, who liued there in Peace; esteeming *Seuerus* Warres against the *Atrians*, to concerne him nothing at all.

*Seuerus strange
fortune.*

*Si vis securus
esse, time secu-
ritatem. S. Ber-
nard.*

*King of Parthia
surprized.*

** Fight with
Laurell, as
Conquerours
vied.*

all. In which Security he little thought of any Disaster. *Seuerus* Host arriving there against their wills, by the Violence of the Current; presently landed, & immediately fell a spoiling and rauaging the Country; driuing away all the Cattell they met with, for Prouision; and burning all the Towns (as they went.) Then marcht they to *Ctesiphon*, where the Great King *Artabanus* was resident, and finding the *Barbarians* vnprouided, they slew euery man they found, pillaged the City, and led Captiue all the Women and Children. The King, with a few Horsemen, escaped: but they rifled his Treasures, and taking all his Ornaments, and Jewels, returned to their Ships. Thus got *Seuerus* the Victory over the *Parthians* rather by Chance than Choice. And now hauing sped so happily beyond all Hope, hee sent * Letters to the Roman *Peeres* and *People*, containing a Glorious Relation of his Acts; accompanied with painted Tables, representing all his Battels and Conquests. Hereupon the Senate decreed to him all Triumphant Honours, and

and the Surnames of the Nations hee had vanquished.

Seuerus hauing composed the Orientall Affaires, tooke his way towards *Rome*, bringing with him his Sonnes, who were now bigge Youths. Hauing ended his Iourney, ordered the Prouinces (as was requisite) and visited the * *Myfian* and *Pannonian* Armies, hee entered the Citie in Triumph; the *Romans* receiuing him with Great Acclamations and Glorious Ceremonies. He againe entertained them with Feasts, Sports, Spectacles, and Pageants; giuing them Royall Donatiues, and solacing them with Triumphall Shewes. He abode many yeares in *Rome*, where he wholly gaue himselfe to Matters of Iudicature, and State-Affaires; endeavouring to traine his Sonnes in all Noble Studies, and Exercises. But they being well-growne youths, had their Dispositions corrupted by the *Romane* Diet and Delices; as also by the excessive frequenting of Stage-playes, Chariot-sports, and Reuells. Morcouer, the Brethren fell at

** Myfia, now
Seruia and Bul-
garia.*

*Seuerus Tri-
umph.*

*His Sonnes
Dissensions.*

variance, one with the other; their first Quarrell being about the Childish desire of Victory, at Quail-fights, Cock-fights, and the Wrestling of Boyes. Yea whatsoever they saw or heard in publique, they were still diuided; neuer affecting the same Thing; but what the one applauded, the other scorned. Which discord was fomented by both their Seruants and Flatterers; who * colloqued with them for their owne Ends. *Seuerus* vnderstanding their Differences, assaied to reconcile them and reduce them to better Temper. The Elder of them (whose * Genuine Name was *Bassian*, before his Aduancement to the Imperiall Family,) *Seuerus* after his Inauguration in the Empire, named *Antonine*; which was the Surname of *Marcus*. To him he gaue a Wife; hoping that * Marriage would make him a staid Man. She was the daughter of *Plautian*, Captaine of the Prætorian Bands, who was (as they say) but of meane Estate in his youth, and proscribed for Sedition, and other Crimes. Hec was *Seuerus* his Countryman, (an

Affrican

Affrican borne) and (by Report) his Kinsman: and (as some haue taxed him) in his younger yeares, his Catamite. Him *Seuerus* aduanced from very low Degree, to great Dignity; enriching him exceedingly with the Goods and Lands of condemned Persons, and almost sharing the * Empire with him. Which Noble Fortunes he abused to all Licentiousnesse; omitting no Cruelty nor Outrage to compasse his Designs; being more Tyrannically stern, than all the Princes that euer were. To his Daughter did *Seuerus* match his Sonne, and vnite his House to his.

But *Antonine* taking small ioy in those Nuptials, whereto hee was forcibly yoked, without any præ-election of his owne; infinitely hated both the young Lady and her Father; scorning to lodge or cohabite with her; yea, he so loathed her, that he daily monaced to kill Her and her Father, as soone as he were sole Emperour. Which when She still told her Father, shewing him how he abhorred her, he mightily stomackt it. *Plautian* therefore confide-

X 2

ring,

* Of *Seuerus* and *Plautian*; See an excellent Passage in the Lord St. Albans Essay of Friendship.

Forced Marriage.

* καλακούν-
τις.

* γνήσιον.

* γάμος συνε-
τίσις δίδον.

Plautian the
Mightiest Fa-
vourite of the
World.

* Vid. Alex. ab
Alex. lib. 5. cap.
18.

ring that *Seuerus* was now growne old and diseased, and that *Antonine* was a bold fierce Youth, he feared his Threats, and resolved to doe some Exploit, rather than suffer himselte to be made away. Moreover, he had many Prouocatiues to aspire to Soueraigntie: such Excessiue Wealth, as neuer any Subject had the like: Martiall Men were All at his Becke: the whole Roman State highly honoured him: yea his Ordinary Garbe made him very Gracious with the People: for he still wore the Senatorian Robe, *purpled and embrodered with Golden Studds, and was ranked with the Prime Nobilitie. A Sword was borne before him, and He alone represented the Emperours Person. Hee walked abroad with such Terrible Maiestie, that none durst come neere him; and if any met him (by chance) they stept aside: his Gentlemen Vthers making Proclamation, that None should stand in the way, nor looke at him; but turne aside and looke downwards. When *Seuerus* vnderstood this, he disgusted it, and began to thinke harshly of him;

in

in so much that he clipt the Wings of his Authoritie; commanding him to leaue that insolent Demeanour. *Plautian* taking this as an intolerable Affront, fell roundly to surprize the Empire: And this was his Plot: There was one *Saturninus*, that had a Tribunes *Place vnder him, and was exceedingly deuoted to *Plautian*: and though All were intirely his, yet he, by his Singular Veneration, had won his Affection more than the rest. Thinking him to be a most trusty Fellow, and the onely Engine for his secret Designes, hee sends for him in the Euening; and All being commanded to void the Roome, I spake thus to him:

His Treason.

* The Command of 1000 Souldiers.

NOW is the Time for you to make a braue Consummation of the Loue and Obseruance you haue professed, and for mee likewise to render to you according to your Merits; and to make condigne Retribution.

tion. I put it to your Choice, either to Be as you see Mee now, and to succeed Mee in this Eminent Place; or instantly to suffer Death for refusing my Command. Let not the Greatnesse of the Enterprize affright, nor the Name of Emperours amaze you. When it comes to your turne this Night to releue the Watch, you may goe alone to the Bed-chamber, and what you are to doe, you may secretly effect without any Let. Goe your wayes therefore to the COURT, (without any more adoe) as if you had some speciall secret Message from Mee: and as soone as you come at them, kill them. Be resolute (Man) you may soone dispatch an Old Man, and a Boy. And as you partake the Danger: so
shall

shall you participate the greatest Honour, for so Gallant an Exploit.

At this Speech the Tribune was not a little confused; yet recollecting himselfe, and being a notable shrewd-pated Fellow, (for he was a Syrian borne, and your Eastern Men are generally wise, and of quicke sense) he considered, that to reject the Motion of so mighty a Potentate, being in so great Rage, were present Death: wherefore pretending that he infinitely liked the Business, he adored him as Emperour, beseeching his Warrant for the execution: (For it was the manner of Tyrants, when they commanded any to be slaine (without Iudiciall Proesse) to signe a Warrant to that purpose, for the Actors Discharge.) Plautian, blinded with Ambition, deliuerd his Warrant to the Tribune; strictly charging him, that as soone as he had killed both the Princes, before it were noised abroad, hee should send some to call for him, that hee might seize the Palaece and Empire, before any
man

* In warme
Climates people
are generally
more wise.

man dreamt of it. With this Charge and Commission, the Tribune departs, and as he was wont, walkes the Round through all the Emperours Palace; and knowing how difficult it were for one Man to kill two Princes in severall Lodgings, hee intends to disclose all to *Seuerus*; and desired the Doore-keepers to let him in, for it concerned his Life. They deliuering the Message to *Seuerus*, he commands them to bring him in. Being entred, he thus said: *Sir, I am come (as hee that sent mee, makes full account) to kill you, as your Deaths-man; but as my selfe resolute and vow, to be a Preserver of your Life. Plautian traiterously aspiring to the Empire, hath commanded mee to murder You and your Sonne, not only by Word, but also by Writing: (Witnesse this Schedule.) And accordingly I undertooke to execute his Command, lest, upon my Refusal, some other should haue attempted it. This I come to certifie your Maiestie, that you may auoid him. The Tribune having done, fell a weeping. But Seuerus could not instantly credit it: For Plautians Loue had*

Salmatinus detects Plautian.

had taken deepe root in his Heart; and hee suspected it to be a meere Illusion, and cunning Imposture; imagining that his Sonne [the Prince] out of his Hatred to *Plautian* and his Daughter, had deuised this Stratagem and deadly Slander. Wherefore instantly sending for him, he sharply rebuked him, for plotting such things against his deare Bosome-Friend. *Antoninus* swore deeply he knew nothing of it. The Tribune producing *Plautians* Warrant, *Antonine* encouraged him to detect the Crime. The Tribune perceiuing his owne Danger, and well knowing how gracious *Plautian* was with the Emperour, (so that if now hee made not good his Charge, he should be put to a cruell death) said thus; *Sir, what clearer prooffe or stronger Euidence can you desire? yet if you will give me leave to goe out of the Palace, and send a trusty messenger to him, to let him know that I haue done by Command, he will presently beleue it, and repaire hither to seize the Palace. So may You learne out the Truth. Only command All in the*

*ἡ διαβολὴ τοῦ
πατρὸς αὐτοῦ.*

*Antoninus
pater
domini*

Y

Court

Court to be quiet, that there may bee no intelligence given to prevent the Plot. This being agreed, hee sends a speciall friend to *Plautian*, to bid him come quickly, (now both Princes were slaine) before it were blazed abroad; that possessing the Castle, and settling himselfe in the Empire, hee might get the Soveraignty in despite of all men. *Plautian* beleeving the Message, was full of hope, and putting on a Cuirace (for Defence) vnder his Garments (the Night being well spent) he posted in his Caroch to the Court, taking but a few with him, that supposed the Emperours had sent for him about extraordinary Affaires. Being entered the Royall Palace without any stop, (the Corps de Guard, knowing nothing of the Businesse) the Tribune meets him, and (of set purpose) salutes him Emperour; then taking him by the hand in friendly sort, he leads him to the Chamber where hee said hee had throwne the dead Bodies of the Emperour; (*Seuerus* having appointed some of his Guard, as soone as hee entered the

Roome,

Roome, to lay hands on him.) But *Plautian*, (who little expected such a banquet) perceiving (when he was come into the Chamber) both the Emperours standing there, and that he was taken in the manner, being horribly afraid, fell on his knees, and besought them, not to misdeeme him; saying, it was a meere Gull and Tricke put upon him. *Seuerus* exprobrating his Ingratitude, in rewarding his many Honours and Favours in that sort; and *Plautian* on the other side remembering him of his ancient Loye, and approved Fidelity, the Emperour beganne by little and little to incline to beleeue him; till his Cuirace was discerned by the opening of his Garment. Which *Antonine* spying, being a bold cholericke youth, and bearing a grudge against him; Sir (quoth he) what colourable answer can you make to these two points? First you come to vs (thus late) valent for. Next, what is the meaning I pray of this Cuirace? who uses to sup or banquet in Armour? with that he commands the Tribune, and the rest that were

Y 2

present,

* *Agrippinus*.

Plautian the
Traitor be-
trayed.

Plautian slain.

presented to dispatch him with their Swords, as an open Enemy. They (with out delay) did as the young Emperour bade them, and threw his carcasie into the High Way, to be the Scorne of them that hated him.

This End had *Plautian*, answerable to his Exorbitant Life & Insatiate Ambition. *Seuerus* henceforth made two Praetorian Praefects, and spent most of his Time in his Royall Houses in the Suburbs or in the Sea-Coast of **Campania*, ministring Justice, and attending State Affaires. He was also exceedingly careful to have his Sonnes at Rome, bred in Honourable Fashion. For he perceived they were more addicted to Playes and Games, than was agreeable to their Princely Estate. The pursuit where of, and their eager Desire to winne, being still accompanied with Different Successes, and vehement Altercation, distracted the Brethrens Affections, and inflamed them with Fire-brands of Enmity and Discord. But *Antonine* especially (now *Plautian* was made away) beganne to be intolerable in his

*The Region betwixt Rome and Naples.

**Seuerus* was a good Law-giver. *S. Ann. Viñ. de Ca. m.*

his Behaviour, and Formidable to All, vsing all possible meanes to destroy his Wife, daughter to *Plautian*. But *Seuerus* sent her away with her Brother into *Stecily*, assigning them sufficient Maintenance to live plentifully, (imitating *Augustus*, who dealt in like sort with *Antonines* Sonns, when he became his Enemy.) And now hee mainly laboured to reconcile his Sonnes, and reduce them to Vnion & Vnanimie. Remembring them out of old Stories and Tragedies, of the Disasters which befall to Brothers that were *Princes*, by such Dissentions. He shewed them how full of Money the Treasuries and Temples were, so that they needed not to seek for Wealth and Riches abroad, that had such Abundance at home; whereby they might bountifully reward the Souldiers at their pleasure. Thus the Roman Guards were quadrupled, and so puissant an Army lay before the City, that considering the Number of men in Armes, bluenesse of their Badges, and great Store of Treasure, no Forraine Power was able to come near them. And yet (hee said)

Seuerus Instru-
tion to his
Sonnes:

* *Quorolus.*

much covet
of wealth

said) would come to Nought, if they durst
and were done with the others.

Thus did he daily Schoole them, and
by sharpe Reprehensions, and faire
Speeches, stroue all he could, to bring
them to Sobriety and Temper. But all in
vaine. For these ybrideled Gallants, be-
ing in those first heats of youth, flie in
all kinds of Pleasures (by reason of their
Imperiall State) became worse and worse,
and were more at odds than ever, by the
practices of their Parasites, who did not
only base offices in serving their Lusts, but
were also still projecting new Quarrels
and Debates betwixt them, for their owne
sinister Ends. But *Seuerus* finding out di-
uers of those bad Instruments, severely pu-
nished them.

The Emperour being in great anguish
of Spirit, by reason of his Childrens vn-
seemly and vn-Princely Demeanour, re-
ceiued Letters from his Vice-Roy of Bri-
taine, certifying, that the Barbarians there
were risen and had ranged ouer the Coun-
try, pillaging and wasting all before them:
that

News from
Britaine.

that he needed therefore greater Forces to
defend the Place; or rather, that his Im-
periall Maestie should come in Person.

Seuerus was glad of this Newes, as natu-
rally desirous of Honour, and Ambitious
(after his Easterne and Northerne Victo-
ries and Surnames) to make a Conquest
of the Britans. Ioyfull also hee was of so
faire an Occasion to take his Sonnes from
Rome, and weane them from the Diet and
Delights of the City, by inuring them to
a sober Military Life. Hee proclaimed
therefore his Expedition into Britaine, be-
ing now Old and Gowtie, but of more
Vigour & Alacritie than any in the Flower
of Youth. In his Journey, he was carried
(for the most part) in a *Siegetta*, and rest-
ed almost in no place. Hauling ended his
Land-Trauels, hee imbarques (with his
Sonnes) for Britaine; where hee arrived
sooner than any thought or expected. Pre-
sently he commands a Generall Muster,
and raising a Great Power, prepares for the
Warre.

The Britans much troubled at the Em-
perours

He means
the Prouincia-
ted Part of Bri-
taine.

Seuerus Expe-
dition into
Britaine.

* Omnia repen-
tine terrant.

* *deserit.*

* The Romans
sleed all Barba-
rians but them-
selves and the
Greeks.
Description of
Picts or Scots,
a Branch of
the Britans.

perours sudden * Arriuall, and vnderstan-
ding that he meant to bring all those For-
ces against them, sent Embassadours to
craue Peace and excuse their Faults. But *Se-
uerus* seeking to protract time (lest hee
should returne to *Rome* as hee came) and
being very eager of the Conquest and Sur-
name of **BRITAIN**, dismisses their
Embassadors without * Dispatch; and
provides all Warrelike Ammunition. And
to the end his Souldiers might stand firme
in Fight, and besitte themselves nimbly,
and on sure Ground, he gaue strict charge
to make Causies and Bridges ouer the Ma-
rish Land: For the most part of that Re-
gion of the *Britans*, being surrounded by
the Oceans continuall Irruption, is Fenny
and Moorish. In those Boggs the * *Barba-
rians* vse to swim and run vp and downe,
plunging themselves to the Middle; for
being halfe-naked, they care not for Mire
or Mud. They vse not Vestures, but weare
about their Waists and Necks an Ornament
of Iron; which they esteeme a rare Ac-
coutrement, and rich Abiliment. (as other
Barbarians

Barbarians doe Gold.) They p^o white and
paine their Bodies with curious Histures,
and the Shapes of all sorts of Creatures; in
which regard, they are not clad all ouer,
lest they should hide that braue Embrode-
rie. They are a most Martiall People,
and verie Furious in Fight: Wherein they
vse onely a narrow Shield, a Pike and a
Sword hanging at their naked sides. As
for Courace on Maskes, they vse none at all,
deeming they would but hinder them in
trauersing the Rookes and Fenaces; out of
which the foggie Vapours continually
arising, make it as if in that Coast alwaies
Cloudy. *Sauernus* hauing all things in readinesse
that he desired, which might further the
Romans, or hinder and annoy the *Bar-
barians*, left his younger Sonne *Getulius*
that Part of the Warre, which was vnder the
Roman Obedience, to minister Iustice,
and govern the Seate, appointing for
his Assistance his most ancient Friend
and Councellour, but adorne *Albinus*
with him, each with his own Band
of
Z
rians.

Their Elegy.

* μαχίματα
τε ἡ φονία.

ταυτα.

Sword and
Pike the King
and Queene
of weapons.

hus in the
country of the
Britans.

* *Viz. at York.*

rians. The Armie (having past those Rivers and Rampiers which discternate the Frontiers of the Romans from the Barbarians) made certaine petty Skirmishes and Excursions, wherein they had still the better. But the Enemies retreated at their pleasure into their Fastnesses among the Woods and Fennes, (so familiar to them;) wherein they hid themselves; which being no small Detriment to the Romans, did spin the Warre to a great length. Meane-while, *Seuerus* being now very aged, fell into a languishing Disease, which forced him to keepe home, and send *Antonine* to prosecute the Warre. But Hee little regarding the Barbarians, bended all his endeuours to winne the Souldiers; perswading them to make him their Chiefe. For hee vehemently aspired to sole Soueraigne; to which purpose, he still deprauid and disualued his Brother. He was also much vexed that his Fathers disease was so lingering, and had not made an end of him; wherefore he sollicitid his Physicians and Attendants, to dispatch the old man, and mis-

chefe

* *Seuerus* lost fifty thousand in that Service. *Dia.*

chefe him (by any meanes whatsoeuer.) At last, *Seuerus* departed this life, being consumed and pined away, rather with Heart-Griefe, than any other Malady: having bin the most famous Warrior of all the Emperours. For none euer got so many Victories ouer Ciuill and Forraigne Enemies. Hee deceased* in the eighteenth yeare of his Reigne, leauing to his young Sons which succeeded him, such a Masse of Treasure, as neuer any did; and so puissant an Army, as was vnmatchable.

* *Seuerus* dies for griefe.

* At *Yorke*, April 4. Ann. Dom. 212.

Antonine (after *Seuerus* death) being now in supreme Authority, instantly began to bathe himselfe in Bloud: putting to death the Physicians for not hastening the old Emperours Death (as he commanded) and killing his owne and Brothers Foster-Fathers, because they had mediated an accord betweene them: not sparing any that either honoured his Father, or was honoured by him. Hee sollicitid also the chiefe Captaines and Commanders (with large Gifts and Promises) to perswade the Souldiers to proclaime him sole Emperour.

Antonines Cruelty.

using all possible Traines and Mines against his Brother. But the Souldiers would in no wise yeeld to it, for they well knew, that *Seuerus* had from their Infancy trained them in the same Degree of Honour, and therefore they were resolved to loue and honour both alike. *Antonine* seeing hee could not preuaile with the Armie, made a League with the Barbarians, to whom hauing giuen Peace, and receiued their Pledges, he departed in all haste to his Mother and Brother. Being come together, their Mothers [the Emperesse] and all the Great Lords and Counsellours of State, assaied to make them friends: whereupon *Antonine*, when he saw that all opposed his Designes, of constraint rather than willingly, yeelded to a dissembled Attenuement. Then both the Brothers, ruling with equall Authority, sailed out of *Britaine*, and took their Iourney for *Rome*, carrying with them their Fathers Reliques. For his Body being burned, the Ashes (mixt with sweet Odours) were bestowed in an Urne of Alabaster, which they tooke to

Rome,

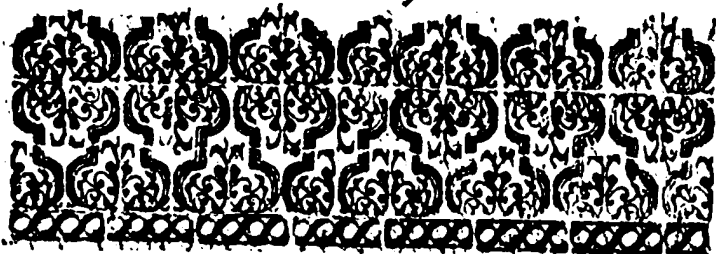
Seuerus his Reliques.

Rome, to place it in the sacred Sepulchers of the Emperours. They led the Army (as Conquerors of *Britaine*) and landed in *Gallia*. Thus haue we shewed in this Booke, the manner of *Seuerus* Reigne and Death, and how his Sonnes succeeded him in the Empire.

laeg. unipar.

Antonine and Geta saile out of Britaine.

The End of the Third Booke.



HERODIAN
His
IMPERIAL
HISTORY.

THE FOURTH BOOK.

The Contents.

TH *Two Emperours enter
Rome in State. What Ro-
mane Emperours Deified. Their so-
lemne Obsequie and Funerall Tri-
umph. Seuerus Deified. Wrest-
ling. The Partition of the Empire.
The Empreffe Dowager hinders it.*
Antonine

Antonine kills Gath. His Prodigality and savage Cruelty. His guilty Conscience. His Exercises and Military Austerity. Hee and Alexander and Achilles. Hee is Royally entertained at Alexandria. He offers at Alexanders Shrine. His Quarrell to the Alexandrians. A fearfull Massacre. Hee pretends to be a Suitor to the King of Parthia's daughter; under which colour, he massacres the Parthians. Hee consults with Magicians, and commands them to conjure. Hee is slain. Macrinus succeeds. His Speech. A terrible Battell betwixt the Romans and Parthians. Hee raises make a sudden League betwixt them. Antonine

The



He Acts of Senor the Empe-
rour during the Eightene
yeares of his Reigne, we haue
related in the precedent Book.

His Sonnes, who were yet young, hastened with their Mother towards Rome: But by the way, they fell to such larres, as that they neither lodged in the same house, nor eat together; being extreme ialous, lest they received poyson one from the other, in their Meats or Drinkes; either secretly from Themselves, or otherwile, by suborning their Seruants. They made therefore the more haste in their Iourny, as supposing, they might Both liue more securely at Rome; and that the Imperiall Palace (which for Numerous and Gorgeous Edifices, was larger than all the City) being disparted betwixt them; there would be roome enough for each of them to haue his seuerall Court, and liue as pleased himselfe.

Being come to Rome, the People received them with Laurels, and the Peeres

Aa

well.

The two Emperours take their Iourney to Rome.

The Magnificent Palace of the Emperours.

They enter Rome in State.

welcomed them. The Emperours themselves went formost; vested in Purple Robes of State. Next after them followed the *Consuls*, which supported the *Urne*, wherein were *Seuerus* Reliques. The Nobles hauing saluted the new Emperours, passed along, and adored the *Urne*: which hauing honoured with Great Pompe and Ceremony, they shrined it in the Temple, where the Sacred Monuments of *Marcus*, and the Emperours (before him) are to be seene. After the Diuine Rites and Offices were celebrated, (as is accustomed at Imperiall Inaugurations) the Princes went to the Palace Royall; which diuiding betwixt them, they dwelt apart, making fast all the secret passages; and vsing only in common the publike Court-gates. They chose also seuerall Guards, and came not together, but for some small while, when they were to shew themselves to the People.

Yet had they speciall care to solemnize their Fathers Funerall with Glorious Ceremonies. For it is the manner of the Romans

Seuerus Funerall.

to

to Deific the Emperours, which at their Decease leaue their Sonnes to succeed them. This Solemnity they call, placing of them among the Gods.

Ouer all the City there is a semblance of Mourning intermixt with that Diuine Celebrity. For the dead Corps is with sumptuous Exequies, buried as others vsually are. Then in the Porch of the Palace, is erected on high, a Stately Bed of Iuory, spred with coverings of Cloth of Gold; whereon is laid an Image of Wax, made very like to the Defunct. This Image lies like a sicke Person, pale and discoloured. On both sides of the Bed, there sit most part of the Day, on the left hand, all the most Honourable Lords, in blacke Vestures; on the right hand, all the Ladies of Honour ennobled by the Splendour of their Parents and Husbands. None of which are adorned with Gold or Jewels, but are vested in thinne white Rayment, after the guise of Mourners. This they do seuen dayes together. Meane-while, Physicians come often to the Bed, as if they

The Ritual Magnificence at the Funerals and Deification of Emperours.

A a 2

visited

visited a Patient, saying still, that he grows worse and worse. When he seems to be departed, the most Noble young Gallants among all the Senators, and Order of Knight-hood, lift up the Bed on their Shoulders, and carry it through the Sacred Street, to the old Forum; (where the Romane Magistrates use to resigne their Offices.) On both sides are Scaffolds erected: On the one part, is a Quire of Boyes of most Noble Birth and Descent; Opposite to them is a Quire of Ladies of prime Nobilitie: All which sing Hymnes and Lauds over the Defunct, with solemne mournfull Melody. Which done, they take up the Bed againe, and carry it out of the City, to *Mars his Field*; in the broadest place whereof is erected a *Frame*, of a Quadrangled Equilaterall Forme; made like a little House, consisting of no other Materials, but huge Beeces of Timber compact together. Within, it is filled with drie Wood: Without, it is decked with Tapestry embrodered with Gold; with Iuory Statuages, & Exquisite Pictures. In

* *ἱπποδάμιος*
κατος.

* *Παλας*: It
reached from
the Palace to
the Forum,
which was the
chiefe Place of
Publike Meet-
ings and Plea-
dings.

* Or *Pzans*.

campus Martius.

* *οὐράμιος*.
The Funerall
Pile, or Deifi-
catory Throne.

In the lower part, is placed a lesser Structure, framed and beautified like the other, with little Gates and Doores set open. There is also a third, and fourth Roomes still lesser, and lesser, and then, diuers other, till you come to the last, which is least of all. Which kinde of Edifice, may be resembled to the *Light Houses*, which by Fire in the Night, direct Ships to a safe Harbour (vulgarly called *Pharos*). The Bed being brought into the second Room, they throw in (by heaps) all sorts of Spices, and sweet Odours that the Earth affords, and all kinde of fragrant and odorate Fruits, Herbs, and Gummes: For there is not a Province, or City, or any Person of Honour and Authority, which is not Ambitious to send the best Presents, to the Honour of their Prince. When a mighty Pile of Aromaticks is amassed together, so that all the place is full then, All of the Order of Knight-hood gallantly mounted on horsebacke, ride round about the Frame, wheeling up and down, and prancing in great Brauery the *Pyrrhic*

* *σπονδαίαι*.

By these *Arabian* Spices and Odours, &c. there seems to be in this suppream Solemnity, a Resemblance to the *Phanis* &c.

* *Εδρος* (In which sense the Authour uses it per totum.)

The Funerall Dance or Triumph.

* Dancing in Armour in new

red by K. Pyr-
rhua. Plin. Hist.
lib. 7. cap. 56.

ritick Measure. In the same stately man-
ner, there ride about the Frame, Purple
Chariottiers, representing the Persons, and
bearing the Images of the Noblest Roman
Worthies and Emperours. Which Cele-
bratie performed, the Successor in the Em-
pire takes a Torch in his hand, and puts it
to the Frame. Then, all the Multitude see
Fire to it on every side, and presently the
whole Frame, filled with such combustible
and odoriferous stuffe, is all on a bright
Blaze. Immediately, from the Top of the
least and highest Turret (as from a Pinna-
cle) an Eagle is let flie into the Aire, at the
Instant of the Firing; which (as the Ro-
mans beleue) carries the Emperours Soule
from Earth to Heauen. And euer after,
they Worship him among the other Gods.

An Eagle let
flie.

Seuerus Deified.

The young Emperours, after the so-
lemne Deification of their Father, retur-
ning home, the Flames of Discord blust
out againe; which growing to a deadly
Feud, they plotted all manner of wayes to
surprize and entrap one another, each at-
tempting all possible means to make
away

away the other, that he might be sole Em-
perour. Yea the Mindes and Affections of
all the Citizens of greatest Power and De-
pendencies were infinitely distracted, both
the Emperours sending (in secret) their
different Letters, and seeking to win and
wedge men to their seuerall Factions, by
faire Promises. But the maior part incli-
ned to Geta, because hee shewed some
Sparkes of Noble Honestie, and was mild
and affable in Conuersation, and vsed Ho-
nourable Studies. For he had still about
him famous learned men, and was fre-
quent at Wrestling and other ingenious
Exercises. Hee was also full of Humanitie
and Courtesie towards All; and of so
Gracefull and Princely Behaviour, that the
Fame and good Opinion of him drew
most Mens Affections to him. But Anto-
nine bore himselfe in a harsh and rugged
Fashion; and being altogether auerse from
the things before recited, affected the Re-
putation of a Martialist and Man of Warre.
Whereupon, doing all things in Choler
and Fury, he fought rather to win Men by
Threatning

The Character
of Geta and An-
tonine.

Wrestling a
Princely sport.

The Empire
diuided.

Threatning than Intreating, and by Feare than Loue. Their Mother seeing them so discordant in all their Actions, (euen of least Consequence) assayed to reconcile them; but in vaine. Whereupon, they (once) resolved to share the Empire betwixt them, lest residing still at Rome, they should be circumvented by each other. Wherefore hauing assembled their Fathers Kinsmen and Councillours of State, they debated (in their Mothers Presence) how to make the Partition: Where all Europe was adiudged to Antonine, and all the Opposite Coast called Asia, was assigned to Geta: (for so hath it pleased the Diuine Prouidence to determinate both Continents by the Propontike Gulfe.) It was also agreed, that Antonines Campe should lie at Byzantium: and Getaes at Chalcedon, a City in Bithynia: that the Armies facing each other (in those Frontire Townes) might guard the Dominions of both, and forbid the Passage by Sea: [Chalcedon being situate ouer against Byzantium, in the Mouth of Pontus Euxinus.] It was like-

wise

* Of this Vid. Strab. lib. 2. and the Trauels of that Noble Learned Gentleman, Master George Sands (p. 27.) -- quem pul. ber Apollo, Omnes per Montes atq. extra per omnia duxit.

wisecordered, that the Senators and Nobles which were Europeans, should reside at Rome; The rest should follow Geta, who destined Antioch or Alexandria (which were not much lesse than Rome) for the chiefe seat of his Empire, and was content to leaue to Antonine the Prouincies ated Moores and Numidians of the South (with the bordering Nations of Affricke) taking to himselfe the Countries (beyond) towards the Orient. While they were thus parting the Empire * by the Map, all the Lords being much grieued at it, their Mother, Iulia thus interrupted them; O my Sonnes, you haue found the way to diuide Sea and Land; and the Ponticke Gulfe (as you say) parts both Continents. But how will you diuide your Mother? How shall I (Wretched Woman!) be torne and mangled betwixt you? First therefore kill me outright, and diuide me (each of you taking his Part) that I also (with Sea and Land) may be diuided betwene you. Hauing thus said, with many Teares, Shee caught hold of them Both (with aloud shricke) and clasping them

* διαμερισαντες

The Emperres
Speech to her
Sonnes.

Bb

in

in her Armes; with great Violence of Affection, endeavoured to reconcile them. Which piteous sight stricke such a horror into All; that the Counsell was dissolved, the Proposition quite cast, and the Princes returned to their severall Palaces. Yet was there no hope of Reconciliation; but still their irreverent Fury increased. At the Elections of Vice-Royes and Presidents; each preferred his Friends; and when they sat in Judgement, they were of different Opinions; so the infinite Lobs of those which had Causes to be heard, for they more regarded Partiality, than Justice or Equitie. Yea, at Sports and Games they were full of contrary sides. Neither did they forbear any sort of Treachery; but dealt skilfully with their severall Cookes and Cup-bearers, to poison each other. Which not taking effect, because of the extraordinary care and caution of Both at their Table; at last Antonine having lost all patience, and resolved to reign alone, intends to Murder his Brother. For seeing his secret Plots succeeded

not,

not, he determined in despite of all Danger, to breake through all Difficulties. Wherefore rushing into his Brothers Chamber (whom he thought he could have killed in his Mothers Armes, who was all embroved with his Blood) which done, hee leaped forth, and rushing through the Court, cries out, hee had like to have beene murdered, and hastily escaped. Then who commands his Guard to conduct him presently into the Campe, to save his life; saying, he should instantly be slain, if he stay at home. They believing what he said, and not knowing what was done within, ran along with him. The City was extremely terrified, and the Emperours running through the City in the Evening. As soone as he got to the Campe, he went to the Chappell, where the Emblems and Images of the Ancestors were kept with religious Veneration, and falling flat on the Earth, thanked the Gods for his great Deliverance. Which when the Souldiers heard, (that were then either bathing, or gone to their Rest) they all flockt

B b 2 thither

* Cuius Pro.

Antonine kills
Geta.

He then wrote
Calpe.

thither in Amazons. *Antonine* going among them, confest not presently what he had done, but cried out amaine, that hee had disceped a dangerous Plot of his Capicall Enemy: (meaning his Brother) and that with much adoe, after a long Conflict, his Adversaries were overcome: in which Fight, both being engaged, himselfe at last (Thanks to his good Fortune) remained sole Emperour. By which dark and intort Speeches, hee meant they should satisfie what was done, and directly understand him. Then (to secure himselfe and the Empire) hee promised every Souldier two thousand six hundred *Asiqua Drachmas*, and double the *Stipend* they were wont to have: bidding them go themselves immediately and take the Money out of the Temples and Treasuries. When hee in one day squander away all the Coin that *Severus* had raked out of others Ruines, in eighteen yeeres. The Souldiers, allured with such a Masse of Money, and understanding how the world went (the Murder being

His prodigality

His prodigality

now

now divulged by them that fled out of the Court) proclaimed him sole Emperour, (terming *Geta* a Traitor.) *Antonine* stayed that Night in the Temple, and taking heart (as having by these Donatives assured the Souldiers,) he repaired (the next day) to the Senate-house, with all his Army, which was better armed than in the vsuall Attendance on the Prince. Having sacrificed, hee mounted the Imperiall Throne, and thus spake:

Antonine's Speech to the Senate.

I am not ignorant how odious and subject to Calumnie the murder of *Domesticks* is at the first Bruit: for Men are apt to pity them that suffer, and to maligne the Actors: so that he which is vanquished, may be thought to be wronged, and the Vi-
ctor

poisoned him,
but (as Aure-
lius Victor saith)
none but lewd
persons belee-
ued it.

~~dispatch~~ him. And so haue I anti-
cipatē (by a iust Vindication) the
Poisons and Sword of an Enemy:
(for so his Deeds stile him.) You
are therefore so thanks the Gods,
that haue reserved you such a Prince,
under whose sole Regiment you may
now liue quietly and securely, with-
out Distractions. For as Iupiter is
the Only Emperour among the Gods,
so haue be decreed that there shall be
but one Emperour among Men.

Having thus said with a Loud Voice
(in great Rage) and casting a terrible
Frowne on his Brothers Friends, he leaues
the Senators (most whereof lookt pale
and trembled) and hurries to the Palace:
where he instantly slew all his Brothers
Seruants and Friends, not sparing any Of-
ficers that were found in the House, nor
any other, no not very Infants: All whole
Carkasses

His savage
Cruelty.

Carkasses being despightfully throwne in-
to Carts, and carried out of the City,
were cast by heapes (at randome) into the
Fire. He spared none that had the least ac-
quaintance with Geta; but put to the
sword, euen Wrestlers, Chariot-drivers,
and all kinde of Players and Actors, that
had any way delighted him; by seeing or
hearing them. He slew also the most Emi-
nent and Opulent Senators, vpon the least
Supposition or Suggestion, that they were
Friends to his Brother. He put to death
Commodus his sister (who was then an old
Woman, and had beene much honoured
of all the Emperours, because she was
Marcus his daughter;) imputing it as a
Crime, that she wept with his Mother, at
her Sonnes Murther. Nor did he forget his
quondam Wife (Plautians daughter) that
liued in Sicily; nor his Cozen-German, na-
med Senecus; nor Pertinax's sonne; nor
the sonne of Lucilla (sister to Commodus)
but cut them all off, together with all the
Imperiall Kindred, and the Flower of the
Nobility and Gentry. Then sent he into

*They had not
the honour of
a decent Funer-
all.

Cc the

the Prouinces, and massacred all the Proconsuls and Procurators, as *Getaes* Favourites. Yea whole Nights were spent in such Tragick Executions of all sorts of People. He buried the Vestall Virgins quick, pretending they had lost their Virginity. Lastly, (which was neuer done before) when at the Circenian * Sports, (where himselfe was a Spectator) the People cast some scoffe at a Charriotier which he favoured; He taking it as an Affront to himselfe, suddenly commanded his men at Armes to rush among the multitude, and kill all that had scorned the Chariot-driuer. Vpon this Command, it being impossible to finde out the Delinquents, in so great a Throng, (no man confessing himselfe guilty) the Souldiers spared none that they light vpon, but either slew them, or took away that they had, in lieu of Ransome. After all which haينous Acts, his Conscience recoiling, and shrewdly stinging him; he was weary of the City life; and resolved to leaue Rome, vpon colour to reforme his Legions, and visit the Prouinces.

* Instituted in honour of Neptune. Vid. Alex ab Alex. Gen. Dic. lib. 6. cap. 19.

His guilty Conscience.

Prouinces. Departing therefore from Italy, he came to the Banks of *Ister*, and the Northerne parts of the Empire; where he exercised himselfe in Coach-races and Combating with all kinde of Wilde-beasts. Sometime he sat in Iudgement, (though very seldome) where, after a few words on either side, he presently gaue sentence. He much affected the *Germanes*, and made them his Confederates and Associates in Warre; choosing from among them, the most Valiant and Personable, to be of his Guard. Yea, he oft laid aside his Roman Habit, and put on German Attire, going abroad in their Caslockes trimmed with Silver; and wearing a yellow Periwig, like the Germane Bush. Which affected Garbe, infinitely endeared him to the Barbarians. And the Roman Army was wel pleased by reason of his profuse Donatiues; and because he descended to the performance of all Military Labours in his own person; for he would first digge (when need required) and if a Bridge were to be made over a Riuer, or a Rampire to be cast, or any Manu-

His Exercises.

His affection to the Germans.

His Military Austerity.

ary Worke or Toile to be vndertaken, he would be the first that should put his hand to it : contenting himselte with a spare Diet, wooden Cups & Platters, and any Bread whatsoeuer ; for his manner was, to take so much Wheat as would suffice one Man ; which he grinded himselte, & then kneading it into Cakes, and baking it on the Embers, eat it. Brieft, he left off all mannner of lunkets and Delicates ; faring no otherwise, than the poorest common Souldier. Moreouer, it pleased him better, (as he pretended) to be called Fellow Souldier, than Emperour ; accustoming himselte to trauell on foot, (as the rest did) and rarely vsing Horse or Carroach ; carrying also his owne Armes, and many times, the Great Imperiall Standard ; which being maruellous weighty, by reason of therich and Massie Gold-worke, was not easily borne by the strongest Ancient bearer. For these and the like Obleruances, the Army loued him as a good Souldier, and honoured him as a braue Commander. And indeed it was a Wonder, that so small

a timberd man, was able to doe so great matters. But when he had visited the Legions vpon the Banks of *Ister*, and went downe into *Thrace*, which borders on *Macedonia*, he then beganne to play *Alexander* ; reuiuing that Kings Memory, by all meanes possible, causing his Statues and Images to be erected in euery City, & filling *Rome* it selfe, the Capitoll, and all the Temples with them. I haue seene also diuers ridiculous Images, which had one entire Body, and one Head, which had two halfe-Faces, to wit, *Alexanders* and *Antonines*. His ordinary Weare, was the *Macedonian* Habit, a * Turban on his head, and Pantofles on his feet. He had a select Troope of young Souldiers, which hee stiled the *Macedonian Phalanx*, commanding his Captaines to call themselves by the names of *Alexanders* Captaines. Hee sent for Youths from *Sparta*, and termed them the *Laconick* & * *Phanite* Band. After this, hauing made the Townes and Cities tenable, hee went to *Pergum* a City in *Asia*, to take Physicke of *Esculapius*, where

He Acts *Alexander*.

* *καυδω*

... of the City
... *Pitane* in
... *Laconia*,
... *Phanite* Band

* Troy.

He Acts Achilles.

* This was an ancient Funerall Rite. Vid. Eurip. Iph. Heliad. l. 7. & Stat. in Epig. p. 11. Sylla and Annibal.

where having done as his Fancie led him, he marched straight to * *Ilium*, to view the Ruines of it, and visit *Achilles* Tombe; which having brauely decked with Flowers and Garlands, he then would needs see *Achilles*; but wanting a *Patroclus*, he plaied this Pranke. He had with him one *Festus*, his most beloved Friend-man, and the Imperiall Remembrancer, who died while he was at *Ilium*, being (as some say) poisoned, that he might haue such a Funerall as *Patroclus*; but others say, he died naturally. However, he commanded his corps to be brought forth, and a great Funerall Pile to be made; whereon having cast the dead Body, & killed all manner of Beasts of be set the Pile on fire, and lifting up a Viall, sacrificed Wine, and prayed to the Winds. But when he was to cast his haire * also into the flame, having a very thin *Bush* natural, all the Company laughed; yet hee made a sorry shift, and cut off all the Haire he had. Of all Generals, hee commended chiefly the Roman *Sylla* and African *Annibal*, whose Images and Statues he created.

Departing

Departing from *Ilium*, and passing thorow *Asia*, *Babylonia*, and other Prouinces (where he settled his Affaires) hee came to *Antioch*; where being honourably entertained, and having staid a certaine time, he sent to *Alexandria*, pretending hee had a great longing to see the City which *Alexander* founded; as also, to consult the God which the Citizens so much honoured. Vpon these two Pretexes, to wit, the Adoration of their Decie, and Veneration of that Heroes Memory, hee gaue order that * *Hecatombes* and *Sacrifices* (of all sorts) should be prepared against his coming. Which Message being deliuered to the *Alexandrians*, (who are naturally Cocke-brained & light-headed) they were almost beside themselves for joy that the Emperour was so deuoted to them. They made therefore such honourable preparations for his Entertainment, as the like (they say) was neuer made for any Prince. All manner of exquisite Musicke and curious Melody was heard ouer all the City. All his Passages were perfumed with all

His Royall entertainment at Alexandria.

* Sacrifices of an hundred Oxen.

His Royall entertainment at Alexandria.

His Royall entertainment at Alexandria.

sorts of precious Odours & Aromaticks. Torches were lighted, and all the Way strewed with Gellomines and Musk-roses. The Emperour entered the City with all his Army, and first went to the Temple; where having sacrificed Hundreds of Beecues, and burnt Heapes of Incense on the Altars, he visited *Alexanders* Shrine; where hee offered his Purple Robe, his Rings set with Paragon Stones, his Belt, Scarfe, and choicest Jewels he had about him: all which he laid vpon his Tombe; whereat the *Alexandrians* being ^{*} oucr-
ioyed, reuelled and feasted day and night, little dreaming what a Banquet the Emperour would shortly make them. For all this Plausibilitie was meerely colourable; his Intendment being to make a generall Massacre among them. The cause of his secret Rancour was this: It was told him at *Rome* in his Brothers time; and after his Death, that the Citizens of *Alexandria* had spoken disgracefully of him. Indeed they are naturally a very scurrilous People, and much giuen to gibing and gicing
of

His Offertory
at *Alexanders*
Shrine.

* *Corruptio.*

His secret
Quarrell to
the *Alexan-*
drians.

The *Alexan-*
drians descri-
bed.

of others; casting out against the most eminent Persons, many cutting Quips, which themselves thinke are fine Conceits; but they against whom they are spoke, take them as great Indignities. For those Iests are most biting, that haue most Relish of Truth. Having therefore much traduced him for his Brothers Murther, nicknamed his Mother *Iocasta*, and scoft him, for that being such a low Grigge, he would presume to personate such High and Mighty ^{*} Heroes as *Alexander* and *Achilles*; they did so enrage *Antonine*, who (by nature) was of a fiery and sanguinary Disposition, that while they thus sported themselves with their Squibs and Flashes, he intended to lash them with a terrible Reuenge. Wherefore the Festiuall Celebrity being ended, he perceiving what an infinite Number were come together into the City, out of the Regions adioyning, made Proclamation, that all the Youths should assemble themselves in a certaine Plaine; that as he had already a Macedonian and Spartan *Phalanx*; so also he might (in ho-

* Or Semi-
Gods.

D d

nour

nour of *Alexander*) haue another Phalaux; named (after him) *Alexandrian*. He willed therefore that the young men should bee so ranked that a Lane might be left for him to walk and take a View, which were fittest for Age, Strength, and Stature, to serue in the Warres. This being beleued (as very probable) in regard of the high Honour he had so lately done to *Alexander*, all the Yonkers accompanied with their Parents and Couzens, met at the place assigned, with great Ioy and Alacrity. *Antonine* passing thorow all the Rankes, and perusing them seuerally, commended first one, and then another; protracting the time, till his whole Army had rounded them (ere any obserued it or thought of it.) As soone as he wist that they were all circuled by his Men of Warre, and taken (as it were) in a Toile, hee presently departs (with his Guard) and makes a signall to the Armie; which instantly rushing in on euery side, make a furious slaughter of the vnarmed Youths, and all the rest that were enclosed; some of the Souldiers employing them

Alexandrian
massacred.

selues.

selues only in killing; other in throwing the dead Bodies into huge deepe Pits, whereon casting much earth, they made a huge great Mount. Many were thrust in halfe dead; and not a few were buried quicke. There perisht also many of the Souldiers: For they which had any breath left in their Bodies, and had not lost all their vigour, caught hold of the Souldiers that flung them in, and haled them with them into the Graues. So great was the slaughter, that streames of Bloud gushing through the Plaine, died the Mouth *Nilus*, and the Shore about the City with Purple Gore. And now affecting the surname of *Parthicus*, and the Honour of Conquering the Orientall Barbarians, (though they liued in * profound Peace) he layes this Plot. He sends Letters to *Artabanus* the King of *Parthia*, and Embassadors with stately Presents; Certifying them, that he was desirous to haue his daughter to Wife; that he was an Emperour, and sonne to an Emperour, and was not minded therefore to be Sonne in Law to any Subject, or meane Person, but

* *supra* *capitulum* *beta*
delus.

An Embassy to
the Parthian.

D d 2

rather

rather to espouse a Queene, or some great Princeſſe; that the Roman and Parthick Empires were the two greateſt in the World, which if (by Affinity) they were united, and their Powers conioyned, (without any Barre or Let by Rivers or otherwise) they would become abſolutely Inuincible; that the Barbarians Nations ſubieſt to both Empires, would be more manageable, if euery ſeueral Country and City had gouernours of their owne Nation; that the Roman Infantry and Pike-men excelled all others in ſet Battel; that the Parthian Caualery & Archers, exceeded for Number & Skill, Both which concurring with correſpondent Military Valour, and all Warlike Neceſſaries, would eaſily reduce the Whole World to an entire Monarchy under one Diadem. And whereas thoſe Countries yeelded Spices, Odours and the fineſt Silkes; and the Roman Dominions abounded in all kinde of Mineralls, and Manufactures, which (in the Diuiſion) Merchants imported but by ſtealth and very ſeldome; were this Union effected, & one ſole Empire conſtituted, there would follow by mutuall Trafficke and Amitie, a happy Inter-

Parthian Archers.

Intercourſe, without Impeachment or Impediment.

The Parthian hauing read theſe Letters, reſuſed the offer at firſt, ſaying; that it was very inconuenient, for the Roman and Barbarian Princes to match together, for what Concord could there be in ſo different Language, Diet, & Habit? that the Emperor might ſinde at Rome, many of great Nobility, and Extraction, not unworthy his Affinity; as himſelfe had likewise among his Peeres and *Arſacide; and that it was not fit that either of their Races ſhould be Mungreliz'd in that manner. This was his firſt anſwer to the Emperours Proposition: but Antonine reinforcing his Suit, and by many Gifts and ſolemne Oaths, confirming his zealous Affection and Deſire of Marriage; The Barbarian King yeelded (at laſt) and promiſing to giue him his Daughter, called him, His Sonne in Law that ſhould be. Which Newes being diuulged, all the Barbarians prepared to entertaine the King of the Romans; and reioyced in hope of an Eternall Peace. Whereupon Antonine paſſing the Riuers

The Parthians Answer.

*Princes of the Bloud deſcended of K. Arſaces.

Antonine enters Parthia.

Riuers without Opposition, progressed ouer *Parthia* (as if it had beene his owne Countrey) the Natiues euery where entertained him with Sacrifices, Crowned Altars, and most exquisite sweet Odours; which he made shew to be exceedingly affected with. Approaching (after a long March to the Court of *Artabanus*, the King goes forth to meet the Bridegroome (his Sonne in Law) in a faire Plaine before the City, attended with a wondrous company of Barbarians, wearing Chaplets of Flowers, and diuers coloured Vestures of wrought Gold; frolicking and dancing to the Musicke of Flutes, Pipes, and Timbrells; for with these Reuells they are maruellously delighted, especially when they are well tippled. Now when the greatest Concourse of People was come together, and the Barbarians (hauing left their Horses, Bowes, and Arowes) were feasting and earowing (at random) and misdeeming nothing, thronged and crowded together to see the Royall Bridegroom; *Antonine* made a Signe to his Souldiers

Souldiers to flie vpon them and murder them. The Barbarians amazed at this, gaue backe and fled; the Romans following the Chase, killing and wounding them. *Artabanus* himselfe being rescued by his Guard, and set on Horsebacke, had much adoe to escape with a few of his Courtiers. The Remainder of the Barbarians were put all to the Sword; for they had neither Horses (which they most needed) hauing turned them to pasture; nor could they runne away, being hindred by their loose Garments, which reached downe to the Foot, nor had they with them their Bowes and Arrowes; for what should they doe with them at a Wedding?) Thus after a mighty Massacre of the Barbarians, *Antonine* taking Magnificent Spoiles, and many Prisoners, departs without any Resistance; burning Townes and Cities as he went, and licensing the Souldiers to take what Pillage and Booty they listed. This Blow the Barbarians receiued ere they lookt for it. *Antonine* hauing harried and wasted the *Parthian* Countrey,

The *Parthians*
massacred.

Countrey, (till his Souldiers were wearie) retreits into *Mesopotamia*, and from thence certifies the Romane Senate and People, that he had Conquered all the Orient, and duced all those Kingdomes vnder his Obedience. The Senate albeit they wel knew how things went, *(for it is impossible that a Princes Actions should be concealed) yet out of Feare and Flattery, they Decreed to him all Triumphall Honours. And now did *Antonine* keepe his Court in *Mesopotamia*, wholly deuoting himselfe to Chariot-races, and Combats with all sorts of Wilde Beasts. He had two Generalls of his Army; the one was very aged, and though no great Statesman, yet a good Martiall man. His name was *Audentius*. The other (called *Macrinus*) was well scene in Points of State, and an excellent Lawyer. Him the Prince did oft shrewdly checke and taunt, (in publique) as a man of no Spirit or Valour, giuing him very Contumelious termes. For vnderstanding that he kept a good Table, and loathed the course Viands, that himselfe delighted in, (like a Souldier)

* λαδνν γδ
εργα βασιλέως
αδύναται.

Souldier) and that he vsed to weare a short
* Cloake, and other City Attire; he called him an Effeminate Coward, and continually threatned to kill him. Which *Macrinus* taking to heart, was mightily enraged. Now there fell out this Accident (for at last *Antonine* was to leaue the Stage.) Being naturally curious and inquisitiue to know not only the Secrets of Men, but of Gods also, and Dæmons; and suspecting that All intended Treason against him, he consulted all Oracles, and sent farre and neare for Magicians, Astrologers, and Wizzards: not one escaping him, that professed those Curious Arts. But misdoubting that they all lyed, and prophesied falsely (to sooth him in his humour) he writes to one *Maternianus*, to whom he had committed the Government of the State at *Rome*; and (as to his most confident friend) He had imparted all his Secrets; willing him to enquire out the chiefe Magicians and Coniurers, that were to be found, and to demand of the Spirits that were raised, how long he had to liue; and whether any intended to sur-

* χαλκιδιον.

Magicians
consulted.

con-
sulted
the
oracles

Coniuring.

prize the Empire. *Maternianus* obeying his Command, (whether the Spirits signified so much, or whether he plotted so against *Macrinus*;) writes back to *Antonine*, that *Macrinus** insidiously aspired to the Empire, and that therefore he should make him away.

Having sealed these Letters (among others) he delivers them (as usually he did) to the Posts that knew nothing of the Contents. They with wonted speed arrive at the Emperours Court, at the very instant of his beginning his Chariot-race, (for he was now entering the Chariot) and deliver him the Packet, wherein the Letters (touching *Macrinus*) were. But *Antonine's* Mind being wholly fixt on his present* Sports, he bids *Macrinus* take the Letters & peruse them, & if there were any Matters of Weight, to certify him; otherwise to attend his Charge as he was wont, (thus he oft used to doe.) And so he hurries away in his Chariot. *Macrinus* retiring himselfe, broke up the severall Letters, and fell vpon that which aimed at his Destruction.

* *Ex. Cud. l. 11.*

Chariot-races
a great sport in
those dayes.

tion. Perceiving therefore that his Danger was great and impendent; and well knowing *Antonines* ferall Cruelty (especially having so faire a Pretext) he reserves that Letter to himselfe, and (as his manner was) acquainted the Prince with the Contents of the rest. But fearing, lest *Maternianus* should write againe of the same Businesse, he resolved rather to doe than suffer; and thus he Plots. There was one *Martial*, a* Centurion, and one of *Antonines* Guard, that still waited on him; whose Brother was a few dayes before, executed by the Prince, vpon bare Information (without Prooffe or Processe) who had also called *Martial* himselfe, base Coward; and *Macrinus* his Favourite (in scorne.) This Man being infinitely grieved at his Brothers Death, and enraged with those reproaches, *Macrinus* (who knew all the Passages) sends for; reposing in him, as having bene formerly his Seruant, and obliged to him by many singular Favours. Him he perswades to kill *Antonine*, vpon the first Opportunity. Whereupon altered with

* A Captaine
of an hundred
men.

Macrinus Promises, and inflamed with his owne Quarrell, and his Brothers Reuenge, he vndertakes to effect it, as soone as was possible. Shortly after it fell out, that *Antonine* lying at *Canna* in *Mesopotamia*, went from his Palace to visit the Temple of the * *Moone* (a good distance from the City) which Goddess, is honoured by the Natives with great Devotion. Taking with him but a small Troope of Horse (not troubling the whole Army,) he went on his Journey, purposing (when he had sacrificed) to returne to the City. In the Mid-way, commanding all to stand off, hee went aside to his Element, taking but a Page along with him. Whereupon all turning their faces and going a great way off (for Honour sake) *Martial* who watched euery Minute of Oppunitie, as soone as he perceived the Prince was all alone, runs instantly (as if He had beckoned to him to doe somewhat) and stabs him behinde with a Stilette, (as hee was vndouering himselfe.) The wound being mortall, hee was suddenly slaine, without recovery.

Which

Canna in *Mesopotamia*.

* Of *Luna* and *Iunio* see *Master Selden*, de *Diu Syria*.

Antonine slain.

Antonine slaine.

Which done, *Martial* takes horse and flies. But the Germane Horsemen which *Antonine* much delighted in, and vsed for his Guard, being next at hand, and the first that saw what was done, pursued him, and thrust him thorow with their Iauelins. When the Report hereof was brought to the Army, they all ran together to the Place, where *Macrinus* was the first that fell a weeping and wailing (dissemblingly) ouer the dead Body. The Souldiers tooke his Death very heauily, accounting they had lost a deare Friend and Companion rather than a Prince: and not conceiting any thing of *Macrinus* Treason, they thought *Martial* had done it, in his owne Quarrell: and so they all returned to their Tents. *Macrinus* hauing burnt the Corps, sent his Ashes in an Urne to his Mother to bury it. Shee was then at *Antioch*, and for grieft of her Childrens Disasters, slew herselfe, whether voluntarily or by compulsion, is vncertaine. This End had the Emperour *Antonine* and his Mother *Iulia*, hauing liued in that manner (as I haue related) hee ha-
uing

uing reigned six yeeres alone (without his Father or Brother.)

Antonine extinct, the Souldiers being all in a Maze, were two Dayes without an Emperour, debating who was fittest to be elected: For they had Intelligence, that *Artabanus* was marching with a mightie Army to be reuenged on them, and to sacrifice them to the Ghosts of them they had trecherously slaine in time of Peace and Festiuall Solemnitie. They proceed therefore to Election; and first they make choice of *Audentius*, a man bred vp in the Warres, and a good Commander. But he alleaging he was super-annate, refuses the Empire: whereupon they elect *Macrinus*, by the perswasion especially of the * Tribunes, who (after his Death) were suspected to haue beene accessory to *Antonines* Murther, and of *Macrinus* Counsell, (as in the Sequele shall be declared.) Thus was *Macrinus* made Emperour, not so much by the Souldiers Loue and Fidelitie, as by vrgent Necessitie. Presently after, *Artabanus* approached with his Forces, leading a huge Army,

Audentius refuses the Empire.

* Coronells or Seriant-Majors.

Macrinus elected.

Army, consisting of great Troopes of Horsemen and Archers, as also Riders on Camels (in compleat Armour) with extraordinary long Lances. Whereupon *Macrinus* assembling his Souldiers, made this Speech:

MACRINVS his Speech to the Army.

IT is no maruell that you all griene so much for the death of so gracious a Prince, or Companion rather. But it is the part of Wise men to take humane Chances and Calamities patiently. His Memory shall bee ever deare and precious among Vs; and his Brave and Noble Acts, and singular Loue and Respect to you, (with whom he so familiarly conuersed) shall to his eternall Glory be recorded

corded to Posterity. And now hauing
duly honoured his Memory, and per-
formed his Funerall Solemnity, it
concernes vs all to looke to our Selues,
and preuent the present Danger. The
Barbarian (you see) is at hand with
all the Power of the Orient, hauing
(in his owne Conceit) a iust Cause
and Quarrell against vs. For we first
prouokt him by infringing the League,
and Warring on him in time of pub-
like Peace and Security. And now
all the Roman Empire depends on
your Valour and Fidelitie: For we
are not to fight with this Great King
about the Borders or Skirts of the
Empire, or about Riuers; but for all
our Fortunes; he being come to re-
uenge his Children and Kinsmen
which we (as he opines) haue slaine
vniustly

vniustly, and contrary to our Oaths.
Let vs therefore take Armes and
(as Romans are wont) keepe our
Ranks, for this confused Barbarous
Rout, (being not well Marshal-
led nor trained, is like enough to be its
owne Ouerthrow. But your good Or-
der, Discipline, and Martiall
Skill in Fight, will both preserue your
selues, and defeat the Enemy. Where-
fore charge courageously, like Worthy
Romanes, and as you are wont, so
shall wee vanquish the Barbarians,
and winne Great Honour: for then
will it goe currant with the Romanes
and all the World; that We did not
pilfer the former Victory, by Fraud,
Treachery, and Perurious Violation
of the League, but by Force of Armes,
and true Valour.

E f

Hauing

* The Romans
feared the Par-
thians more
than any other
Nation :
Read the
Letter in the
beginning of
the next
Booke.
The Battell
betwixt the
Romans and
Parthians.

Having thus said, the Souldiers seeing in what a * Straight they were, put themselves in Battalia, and were [all night] in Armes. At Sun-rising, they descried *Artabanus*, and his huge Host advancing. When the Barbarians had done their Devotions to the Sunne (after their vsuall Guize,) they ranne vpon the Romans (with a terrible Shout) and riding close to them, discharged their Arrowes among them. The Romans, hauing arranged their Battells in such exquisite Order, that the Corners of Horse and More (so Darters, flanked each side, and the light-armed Souldiers had Lanes made between the seuerall Maniples, to sally forth (as occasion serued) with great courage receiued the charge of the Barbarians. Neuertheless, they were extremely galled with continuall Shot of Arrowes, and gored with the long Lances, of the Armed Horsemen, and Camell-men. Yet when the Romanes fought hand to hand, they did easily put them to the worse. But finding themselves ouerpressed by multitudes of Horses and Camels, making sem-

blanc

blanc to retreat; they strewed the way with Calthropes, and other sharpe pointed Iron Engines, which being couered with Sand, and not discerned, did great hurt to the Lanciers, and Camell-riders. For the Horses and especially the Camells (which are tender hoofs) as soone as they trode on them, halted downe-right, and cast their Riders. The Barbarians, while they are mounted on Horses or Camells, fight grimly. But dismounted, they are soone taken, for they dare not come Hand-strokes; and if they bee driuen to flie, or pursue the Enemy, their long loose Garments are a maine Let to them. Thus all the first and second Day, they fought from Morning till Euening. Night parting them, both sides retired to their Campes, as Victors. The third day, they ioynted Battell in the selfe same Plaine; where the Barbarians (being the greater Number) assailed to wheele about, and * inclose the Romanes; who perceiuing their purpose, extended not their Army in Length, but distend it in Front, and so

* Or take in a
Net.
οὐλινωσάντες.

banister

F f 2

preuen-

prevented their Circumvention. Now there
tells such an infinite Number of Men and
Beasts, that all the Field was covered with
them, in so much, that huge Heaps and
Piles of Carcasses (but especially of Ca-
mels) lay one upon another, so high, that
the Souldiers could not come together to
fight, both the Armies being hindered
from passing one to the other, by a high-
ty, and almost impassable Barricadoe of
Carcasses; whereupon they retreated to
their severall Camps.

Macrinus yet still thinking that the only
cause why *Arctianus* fought so fiercely and
obstinately, was because he supposed he
warred against *Antonine* (for the Barba-
rians were wont if they pretended not to
fight, to drop and grow faint hearted;
but at that time, they were more resolute,
intending to fight again, as soon as they
had taken away and burnt the dead bodies,
not knowing that the Author of all those
Embroidements was *Gaius*) sends Heralds
with Letters to the Persian, acquitting
him, that the Emperor was dead, and that

received condign Punishment for the Violation of his Oath and League ; that himself was now elected to the Empire, by the Romans (to whom it belonged) and that what was formerly done, did much displease him ; that hee was therefore willing to restore all the Captives that were remaining ; and all the Spoiles that were carried away ; and that he also much desired, of his Enemy to make him his Friend, and to confirme the Peace by Oath and Sacrifice.

Which Letters *Artabanus* hauing read, and being fully informed (by the Heralds) of *Antoninus* murther; conceiuing also, that he was sufficiently plagued for his perfidiousnesse; and satisfying himselfe with the rendition of the Captiues and Spoiles, (without more effusion of Bloud) he concludes a Peace with *Macrinus*, and returns home. The Roman Emperour marched likewise with his Army out of *Mesopotamia*, and went to *Antioch*.

Heralds.

A sudden League.

The End of the Fourth Booke.

Antonine; Julian beheaded. Battell betwixt Macrine & Antonine. Macrine flies, and is beheaded. Diadumenianus Caesar. Antonines Devotion at Nicomedia. He sends his Picture to Rome. His Acts at Rome. He dances about the Altars. His Cruelty and Excess. He writes to the Senate to excuse his ravishing of a Nun. He marries his God to Minerva, and after divorces them. He marries the Sunne and Moone together. Hee intbroes his God in a new Temple. His Marriage Donatines Alexander, made Caesar. Wrestling a Princely Exercise. Stage-players highly preferred. Antonine slain.

Wee



WE have treated in the former Booke, of the Reigne and End of Antonine, and of the Treason wrought against him, and of his Successour. *Macrinus* remaining at *Antioch*, sent Letters to the Senate and People of *Rome*, to this effect.

M A C R I N V S his Letter to the *Romane Senate*, &c.

FOr as much as you well know my manner of life from the beginning, how mild my Conuersation hath beene, and what great Moderation I used in my former Office, which is not farre from Soueraignty, (seeing the Emperour puts himselfe into the hands of the * *Pretorian Præfect*) I hold it needlesse to vse many words. You may remember how much I was

G g

griued

* Or Generall of his Armies.

griued at his Misgouernment, and not a little endangered for your sakes, when he, giuing eare to all Delators, did extremely Tyrannize you. Wherefore he still railed at me, and publikely taxed me for my Mildnesse and Lenity, which he scorned, and termed Basenesse and Pusillanimity, For delighting in fawning Sycophants, he esteemed them his trustiest Friends and Counsellours, which did whet his Cruelty, and Spurre him to ingenerate Ferity, by exasperating Calumnies; whereas I neuer highly prized Modesty and Humanity. I haue therefore so ended the dreadfull Parthicke Warre (wherein the whole ^{*}Romane Empire was hazarded) as, hauing regard to our Honour, we haue not yeelded a iot to the Enemie (in Valour)

* N. B.

Valour) yea we haue made that great King (which brought so huge an Host into the Field) of an Enemie a Friend, by ratifying a firme League. As for my Gouvernment in the Empire, it shall be so Free and Unbloudie, that you shall rather iudge it an Optimacie than a Monarchie. Nor let any deeme me vnworthy so great Honour, or blame Fortune, for making me of a Knight, an Emperour. For what is Nobility, <sup>* Quid genus
finemine.</sup> without Vertue and Ciuility? Externall Fortunes may befall the vnworthiest; but a mans owne solid Worth is that which begets true Glory. Nobilitie, Riches, and the like, are reputed to make men happy, yet deserue not much to be commended, being deriued from others. But Courtesie and
Gg 2 Affabilitie,

Affabilitie, as of themselves they are louely, so doe they also giue a singular Lustre to the most praise-worthy. What Good did you reape by Commodus his Noblenesse, or Antonine's Succeeding his Father? Such as they, attaining the Rule by Hereditary Right; abuse it at their pleasure (as their priuat Patrimony) to all Licentiousnesse. But they which receiue it of your Bounty, are eternally obliged to expresse their Gratitude by all good Offices. Moreouer, it is often seene, that the Native Splendour and Nobility of Emperours, doth so puffed them up with Pride, that they scorne all men as their Vassalls. But they which get the Soueraignty by moderate Actions, are more careful to retaine with Sobriety, what they

they attained with Difficulty; and to giue all due Honour and Respect to others. For my owne particular, I haue determined to doe nothing without your Approuement, whom I desire to associate as my Counsellours and Assistants in the Mannagement of the State. The Liberties and Franchises which you lost by the Tyranny of those so Nobly-descended Emperours, and which Marcus and Pertinax (raised to the Throne, from a priuate Estate) endeououred to restore, you shall fully enioy. For it is more
 “Honorable for a man to giue the
 “first Lustre to his Family, by his own
 “Noble Achieuements; than base-
 “ly to contaminate (by degenerate
 “and debauched Behaviour) the
 “Nobility receiued from his An-
 cestors. The

Macrinus Election confirmed by the Senate.

The Senate hauing read this Letter, gaue him all their Votes, and decreed to him all Imperiall Honours. Yet was not the Senate so ioyfull at *Macrinus* Succession, as all the Commons were glad at *Antonines* Destruction. For there was not a Man of any Ranke or Qualitie, but thought he had now escaped the Sword which hung ouer his Head. And now * Promoters and all Seruants that had appeacht their Masters, were trussed on Gallowles; all the City of *Rome*, and almost all the Roman World being well weeded of those wicked Wretches, by their Death or Exile. And if any of them skulked so close that they were not apprehended, yet was their poison kept in, for that one yeare that *Macrinus* reigned. For it was his maine Errour, that he did not presently dissolue the Army, (by commanding the Souldiers to their seuerall homes) and repaire to *Rome* immediately; the People still crying and calling for *Macrinus*. But he (vnwisely) stayed at *Antioch*, trimming his Beard, and stalking in State with a solemne slow pace; and

* Sycophants.

Informers punished.

Macrinus his Errour.

and scarce vouchsafing to speake to any that came to him; or with so low a Voice, as (oft) could not bee heard. In which Garbe, he imitated *Marcus* the Emperour; not resembling him (otherwise) in any sort. For he daily gaue himselfe to a more delicate course of life, and was more addicted to Stage-playes, Masques, and Reuels; than to the Administration of the Empire. When he went in publike, he was deckt with Iewels, and a * Scarfe embroidered with Gold & precious Stones, of inestimable Value; which excesse, the *Romane* Army much disliked; holding it fitter for Women, and Barbarians, than Princes. Considering therefore his Effeminate and vn-martiall Conditions, they beganne to disalue him, and were still paralleling his riotous Loosenesse, and *Antonines* Military Skill and Prowesse. They also tooke it very hainously, that they were forced still to liue in Tents farre from home; and many times without prouision of Necessaries; and not permitted to returne into their seuerall Countries (a Peace being now concluded)

* Or Baudricke.

cluded) while he fared plentifully, & liued deliciously. Wherefore, abandoning all respect to him, they watched euery Opportunity to make an end of him. Thus did the Fates decree, that *Macrinus* hauing Reigned but one yeare in such Delicacy, should lose his Life and Empire at once; Fortune ministring to the Souldiers a very small and sleight Occasion, to effect their Desires; (in this manner.) There was one *Mesa*, a woman of * *Phœnicia*, borne in the City *Emesa*, whose sister *Iulia* was Wife to *Seuerus*, and mother to *Antonine*; who in her sisters life-time, had liued many yeares in *Seuerus* and *Antonine's* Court. This *Mesa*, after her sisters Decease, and *Antonine's* Murther, was commanded by *Macrinus*, to take her Goods, and remoue into her Natiue Countrey. Now she had great Store of Coine, which shee gathered all the while she liued in so flourishing an Estate. And being now old, she returned to her old home. She had two daughters, the elder named *Soamis*, the younger *Mam-mea*; that, had a sonne called *Basianus*; this,

Mesa.
* See Master
G. Sands De-
scription of it,
in his Iournall.
p. 207.

this, another, called *Alexianus*: both bred vp with their Mothers and Grandmother. *Basianus* was vpon the point of fourteene yeeres; and *Alexianus* of ten: both Priests of the *Sunne*, which is worshipped (as a God) by the *Phœnicians*, and termed (in their Language) *Heliogabalus*: to whom they built a stately Temple, brauely adorned with Gold, Siluer, and precious Stones. Nor is the *Sunne* only adored by them, but also by the bordering Princes and Kings of the *Barbarians*, which yeerely striue who shall send him the most costly Donaries. This God hath no Image to represent him, that is made with hands, after the Greeke and Roman fashion; but there is onely a huge great * Stone, all round from the bottom, and sharpe towards the top, like a * Cone. The Stone is of a blacke colour, and they confidently affirme that it fell from Heauen. Some shining Spots there are in it, and diuers Figures. This (they say) is the *Sunnes* Image, not made by humane Art. To this God was *Basianus* sacred, as being the elder Sonne; and therefore did

H h

hee

The Temple
of the Sun.

* V. Io. Selden;
† πῦρ de Dis
Syr. Synt. 2.
c. 1.
* Or Spire;

The Image of
the Sun.

Baffian.

hee execute the Priests Office, being vested (after the Barbarian Rites) with Gold-embrodered Coats, with hanging Sleeues reaching downe to the Foot. His Vndergarments, which couered him all ouer from his Hands to his Legs, were likewise Cloth of Gold tiffued vpon Purple : His Head was adorned with a rich Crowne of Precious Stones. He was a delicate gracefull Youth, and of so sweet an Aspect, that he was held the wonder of his Time. So that his Beautie, Age, Shape, and costly Habit corresponding, he might not vnfitly be compared to the dainty Images of *Bacchus*. This braue young Priestling, as he sacrificed, and caperd about the Altars, to the Musicke of Flutes, Pipes, and all kinde of Instruments, was curiously eyed of all, but especially of the Roman Souldiers, either because they knew he was of Imperiall Linage, or because his attractive Beauty drew all their Eyes vpon him : for at that time a great Army was quartered neere to that * City, for defense of *Phanicia*; being soone after lead thence, as we shall hereafter shew.

The

* *Amf.*

The Souldiers therefore daily repairing to the City and Temple, vnder colour of Devotion, were raiisht with the sight of so rare a Creature. Now many of them, being Roman Fugitiues, were familiarly acquainted with *Mæsa* : who (when they extold his Fauour) told them (whether truly or no, is vncertaine) that hee was sonne to *Antonine*, (though he were reputed anothers) who lay with her young faire daughters in the time of her abode (with her Sister) at the Emperours Court. Which when they heard and had told their Fellowes, the Bruit of it flew thorow all the Armie. It was also reported, that *Mæsa* had great store of Treasure, and would giue it all to the Souldiers, if they would render the Empire to her Nephewes. Whereupon they promising to receiue her and all hers, and proclaime *Antonines* sonne Emperor, (if she would come secretly in the Night to the Campe) the Old Woman reloued to vndergoe any Hazard, rather than liue a priuate obscure Life. Wherefore, issuing priuily out of the City in the Night with

Hh 2

her

Bassiana a young
Priest proclaimed
Emperor.

her Children and Nephewes, she was conducted by the Troope of Fugitiues to the Army ; where all the Souldiers welcomed her, and proclaiming the Boy, *Antonine*, cloathed him in a Purple Robe of State. Then fetching into the Campe all her Prouision, together with her Daughters, and their Husbands, and whatsoeuer Goods or Cattell she had in the Fields and Villages, they victualled and fortified the Campe, that (if need were) they might hold out a Siege. When this Newes was brought to *Macrinus* lying then at *Antioch*, the Army there, vnderstanding likewise (by Report) that *Antonines* Sonne was found out, and that *Iuliaes* Sister had giuen great store of Siluer to the Souldiers, they beleeued all to be infallibly true, and began to wauer and take new Resolutions, being excited thereto, both by the Grudge they bore to *Macrinus*, and Commiseration (as it were) of the Memory of *Antoninus*; but especially for the hope of Cash: insomuch, that many presently fled to this new-found *Antonine*.

Macrinus

Macrinus scorning all this, as * Boyes-play, and being as Iouiall as euer, stirred not himselfe, but sends one of his Captaines with certaine Companies, which he thought sufficient to tame the Rebels. As soone as *Iulian* (so the Captaine was called) approached the Campe walls, instantly the Souldiers that were within, shewed the Boy to the aduerse Army, from the Turrets and Pinacles, proclaiming him to be *Antonines* son, and holding vp their purples full of money (as a Bait to betray *Macrinus*.) Whereupon the Souldiers without, beleeuing he was *Antonines* sonne, and perswading themselves, he did exceedingly resemble him in Face & Lincaments, strucke off their Captaine *Iulians* head, and sent it to *Macrinus*. Which done, the Campe gates were opened and all let in. Thus were their Numbers increast to a competent Army, not onely to hold out a Siege, but also to fight a Battel, being augmented also by the Accessse of others that in great Troopes reuolted to them. Which *Macrinus* vnderstanding, rouzes vp his spirits, & leads forth all his Army

* as musaet-
os 87.

Iulian beheaded.

my to assaile the Campe. But *Antonines* Souldiers, not intending to indure a Siege, march into the Field. Both the Armies met on the borders of *Syria* and *Phœnicia*; but *Antonines* fought more fiercely, as knowing they should be soundly punished if they were overcome: on the other side, *Macrinus* was more faint and remisse, and many of them fled to *Antonine*. Which when *Macrinus* saw, fearing lest all leaving him to the foure winds, he should be taken prisoner, and villanously intreated: When it grew toward the evening, he stript himselfe of his Purple Surcoat * and other Imperiall Ornaments (while his Army yet stood firme) and being attended with a few of his trustiest Captaines, betooke him to Flight: shaving his Beard close (lest he should be knowne) and shrowding himselfe in a Riding Cloake and Hood (posting Day and Night to prevent the Fame of his Misfortune.) For his Captaines euery where tooke vp Coaches, as if *Macrinus* still being Emperour, they were sent from him about extraordinary Affaires.

Thus

The battell betweene *Macrine* and *Bassian*, or *Antonine*.

* χαμῖδον.

Macrinus dies.

Thus he escaped by Flight. Meane while, both Armies fought; *Macrinus* his Guard (termed the *Prætorian Band*) * brauely maintaining Fight against the whole Power of the Enemy; for they were the tallest and choicest Men that could be found. All the other Multitude fought for *Antonine*. But when *Macrinus* his Men, after a great while, neither saw him, nor any signe of Soueraigntie, not knowing whether hee were slaine, or fled, or what was become of him, they were in a great Maze; for they determined to engage themselues no longer for him, that was not to be seene; and yet they feared to come into their Enemies hands, by yeelding to be taken prisoners. When *Antonine* vnderstood by the Renegadoes, that *Macrinus* was fled, hee sends Heralds to certifie them, that it booted not to fight for an * vnmanly Fugitiue; that he pardoned them all that was past, and would confirme the Pardon by Oath; and the better to assure them, would make them presently his Guard. Thus all giuing Credit to the Heralds, yeelded. Instantly

Antonine

* *Prætorian*.

* *adulterum*.

* *Chalcedon*, a
Sea-City, situ-
ate in view of
Byzantium.
Strabo. lib. 12.

Macrinus be-
headed.

Diadumenianus
Cæsar.

Antonine sends to pursue *Macrinus* that was now gotten a great way on his Journey: He was found at *Chalcedon** a City of *Bythynia*, grievously sicke and over-toiled with Trauell, being hid in the Suburbs, where they stricke off his head. It was said that he made such haste to *Rome*, relying on the peoples loue, but as he was passing into *Europe* over the *Proponticke* Gulfe (being come neere to *Byzantium*) he was driuen backe by contrary Gusts, as if the Winds themselues had conspired to his Punishment. Thus *Macrinus* not being able to escape his Pursuers, came to a miserable end, (through his Improuidence) determining to goe to *Rome* at last, which hee should haue done first of all; haping neither good Fore-sight nor good Fortune: his sonne *Diadumenianus* (whom he had made *Cæsar*) being slaine also with him. When all the Army had saluted *Antonine* Emperour, and he was now established in the Soueraignty, the Orientall Affaires being ordered (as was requisite) by his Grandmother and Friends (for he was very young and

and of no Experience,) he made no long stay there, but prepared for his Journey to *Rome*. *Mesa* longing to returne to the Palace, where she had so long flourished. When Intimation hereof was giuen to the Roman Peeres and People, it was heauy Newes to All. *Antonine* marching out of *Syria*, wintered at *Nicomedia*, (the Season so requiring.) There he tell to his hiddy-giddy* Veneration of his Countrey Deity (whose Priest he was) with Antique Dances; attired in rich *Sacerdotall* Vestments of Gold, issued on Purple; adorned with Iewels and Armelets: and wearing Coronets of Gold and precious Stones, made like a Persian Diadem. The fashion of his Habit was betwixt the long Robe of the *Phenicians*, & the Apparrell of the Medes. For he scorned the Greeke and Roman Attire, as made of Wooll, that is (as he termed it) of base stufte; not daining any other Weare, but Syrian Silkes; and going abroad usually with a Noise of Flutes and Shalmes, as at his sacrificing Solemnities. Which *Mesa* much distasting, humbly be-
I i sought.

Antonine win-
ters at *Nico-*
media.

* *ἱεραὶ χοροὶ*

* *Συστή.*

* Parliament-
house.

* *καλλωπις*
ματα.

He sends his
picture to
Rome.

sought him to put himselfe into the *Romane* Habit, lest entring the City and **Curia* in that exoticke and Barbarous Garbe, he should be an Eye-lore to the Beholders, not vsed to such gaudy and garish Dress^{es}*, which they would iudge fitter for Women than Men. But heriecting her as an old doting Foole, and refusing all good Counsell, (for he would haue none about him, but such Phantastickes as himselfe, which soothed him in his vicious Humours) resolued to weare no other Fashion, and therefore meant to try a Conclusion, How the *Romane* Senate and People would like it. Whereupon he sent to *Rome* his owne Picture (at large) in his Superfine Pontificalibus, and withall, the Image of his Patriall God, whose Priest he was; commanding them that carried it, to place it on-high, in the midst of the *Curia*, over the Image of Victory; that when the Senate assembled, all the Nobles might burne Incense, and sacrifice Wine before it. Also he made an Edict; that all the *Romane* Magistrates, and Sacrificers, should, before

fore all other Gods that they remembered at their Deuotions, pray to the new God *Heliogabalus*. Wherefore when (afterward) he entred *Rome* in the foresaid Habit, he was no Nouelty to them, hauing beene vsed to his Picture. Giuing therefore great Donatiues to the People (as new Emperours are wont) he exhibited all kinde of stately Shewes; and erected to his God a most gorgeous Temple, wherein were many Altars, on which euery Morning he sacrificed hundreds of Beecues, and great numbers of Sheepe. Burning also huge heaps of all manner of redolent Odours on the Altars, he powred out [in sacrifice] many Rundlets of the daintiest old Wines, so that Streames of Wine and Bloud intermixt, ran ouer all the Temple. Then fell hee to *dance about the Altars, to a Consort of all kinde of Instruments, diuers of his Countrey-women capring and skipping with him, as they played on Cymballs and Timbrels; while all the Nobility and Order of Knighthood, stood gazing at these Gambolds, (as Spectators in a Theatre.)

His A&ts at
Rome.

* By these
Dances, the
Gentiles inti-
mated, that
euery part of
their body
was to be
employed in
the seruice of
their Gods,

Moreover, the Entrails of the Sacrifices, and Aromaticks, laid on Golden Plates, were borne not by servants and meane Persons; but by Generalls of Armies, and the chiefest Officers of State, vested in long Robes with hanging Sleeves, (after the *Phœnician* fashion) and shod with linnen Shooes, like Syrian Prophets. Whom he admitted to these Mysteries, he accounted to have highly honoured. And though he seemed wholly devoted to Dances and Sacrifices; yet he kept more Tragical Reuels; executing many Wealthy and Noble Persons, which (as he was informed) tooke small pleasure in those things; and now and then scoffed him. He tooke to wife the most Illustrious of all the *Roman* Ladies; whom he called *Augusta*, yet soone after diuorced her, and stripping her of all Honours, sequestred her to a priuate Life. After, pretending hee was in Loue, and intending now to shew his manhood, he violently tooke out of *Vesta's* sacred Nunry at *Rome*, a Vestall Virgin (who by the Diuine Lawes was to

continue

Antonines cruel.

His marriages.

* *Pomp. Latins* sayes, they might marrie after 30 yeeres of age. *Lib. de Sacer. Rom.*

continue in Chastitie and Virginitie to her end) and married her. And when he heard that the Senate was much aggrieved at that Sacrilegious Act, he sent them a consolatory Letter; certifying them, *That it was but a humane sinne; That he was enchanted with the Magicke of her Beautie; and that it was no incongruitie, for a Priest to marry a* * *Priestesse: which was therefore a most sacred Match.* But this Wife he kept not long, but cashiering her, tooke a third, which was said to be of *Commodus* Linage. Nor did he thus play at fast and loose with humane Matrimonies, but now his God also (whose Priest hee was) wanted a wife. Hee tooke therefore into his Bed-chamber the Image of * *Pallas*, which the *Romans* kept in secret Veneration, vnsene of any; and till that day had neuer beene remoued since it was brought from *Troy*, but only when the Temple was * *fired*: and so he married that Goddesse and his God together in his Palace. Soone after, giuing out, that his God liked not such a Martiall Wife, that was euer in Armes;

Antonines Letter to the Senate.

* *Isidus.*

Hee marries Gods together.

* Three cubits high, holding a Speare in the right hand, & a Spindle in the left.

* It cost the High Priest *Metellus* his Eyes, to rescue it out of the Flames.

Armes; he commanded the Image of *Vrania* to be brought: Which hauing beene exceedingly adored by the *Carthaginians* and *Africans*, was erected (as they say) by *Queene Dido* (the *Phœnician*) what time she reedified *Carthage*, by cutting an * *Oxe-hide*. This Goddesse the *Africans* call *Vrania*; the *Phœnicians*, * *Astroarch*, or the *Moone*. *Antonine* said, it would agree brauely, to marry the *Sunne* and *Moone* together. He sent therefore for the Image, and all the Treasure and Gold in the Temple; giuing it to his God, for a Portion with her. When the Image was brought and set neere to *Heliogabalus*, he commanded all the people of *Rome* and *Italy* to vse all publike and priuate Feasts and Exhilarations for ioy of the Gods Wedding. He erected also in the Suburbs a mighty and magnificent Temple, into which euery yeere (about Midsummer) he brought his God; recreating the People (as he thought) with Chariot-Races, Stage-playes, Feasts and Night-shewes*. He brought his God out of the City into the Suburbs, placed in a Caroach adorned

* *Dido* bought of the *Libyans* so much Ground as an *Oxe-hide* might compass: then cutting it into small thongs, she inclosed 22. furlongs, and there built *Carthage*.

* *Queene of* *Starres*. *Vid. Selden de Diis Syris*.
He married the *Sunne* and *Moone*.

* *Masques*.

adorned with Gold and most precious Stones, and drawne with six goodly white Steeds, decked with rare Gold-worke and rich Caparisons. There was no man in the Charrer, but all attended about it, as if the God had driuen it. *Antonine* running backward with his Face towards the Image, went before the Charrer, leading the Horses by the Reines; going all the way backward (in that sort) still looking on the God. Lest he should fall or stumble, the Way was strewed with Filings of Gold; and his Guard supported him on each side for his more safetie; the People running along with Torches, and throwing Flowers and Garlands. This pompous Shew was honoured with the Images of all the Gods, and the most sumptuous Donaries that were in the Temples; as also with the Imperiall * *Iewells* and *Ornaments*: All the Nobilitie, Gentry, and Soulditrie accompanying it. When he had Shrin'd his God in the Temple, he solemnized the aboue mentioned Sacrifices and Festiuities. Then hee ascended exceeding high
Turrets

The Inthronization of *Heliogabalus*.

* *κεφαλαια*.

A strange
Largesse.

* This was
done by throw-
ing little Balls
or Tickets :
which were
warrants for
receit of the
Largesse.

* His Grand-
mother.

* The Title of
the Heire ap-
parant.

Turrets purposely made for him : whence he threw (as a Largeſſe) among the People, Gold and Silver Plate, and all kinde of rich Apparell and fine Linnen : also all manner of tame Beasts, * except Swine; which he (as all the *Phœnicians*) abhorred. Many there perished, being either trod to Death, or thrust thorow with the Souldiers Pikes : so that it proved a fatall Festiuall to many. He oft vsed his Charret-Sports and wilde Dances in publike, not caring who saw his Vnprincipely Prankes. Hee walked abroad with his Eyes painted, and Cheekes Purpled, disfiguring his faire Face with soule Tinctures. Which * *Mæsa* perceiuing, mistrusted the Souldiers dislike; and fearing if ought came to him, she should be remanded to a priuate Life, shee perswades the vaine young Fondling to adopt for his Sonne, and declare *Cæsar*, * his Cousen German and her Grandchilde by her other Daughter *Mammaea* : Speaking him faire, and finely instilling into him, *That it was most meet, that He being dignified with the Sacred Title of a Priest, should attend onely*
on

on matters of Religion, and the Celebration of Diuine Orgies and Offices ; and that some other should be substituted to manage Humane Affaires, and be as his Vice-Roy, to free him from all Cares and Encumbrances of State : yet no Stranger or Alien, but rather his Cousen German to be so honoured by his Princely Favour. *Alexianus* was he, then named *Alexander*, his old name being changed into that of the *Macedonian* Kings : for that famous King was much honoured by *Antoine* (Sonne to *Seuerus*) who was both their Father, as the old Beldame pretended : not sparing to vaunt of both her Daughters dishonestie, to make their Sons more gracious with the Souldiers. *Alexander* therefore was proclaimed *Cæsar*, and made Consull (or Associate) with *Antoine* : the Senate ridiculously decreeing what he commanded ; to wit, Him to be the Father, (that was 16 yeeres old) and *Alexander* the Sonne, that was 12 yeeres old. After that *Alexander* was made *Cæsar*, *Antoine* assaied to traine him to his Courtes, as Dancing, Reuelling, Sacrificing, and
K k the

*Alexander made
Cæsar.*

the like Rites, Robes, and Ceremonies. But his Mother *Mammaea* weaned him from those vaine and vnseemely Exercises, and trained him vp in honourable fashion, secretly sending for Professors of the Mathematicks, and all Liberall Sciences; and vsing him to * Wrestling, and such Manly Actiuities: instituting him also in Greeke and Roman Literature. Whereat *Antonine* much repining, repented that he had adopted him, or made him his Colleague in the Empire; and expelled all his Tutors from the Court, putting some of the chiefe of them to death, and banishing others: alleaging ridiculously, that the Pedants spoiled his Sonne, not suffering him to dance and reuell, but teaching him to be modest and vse Manly Ezercises. Yea, hee was so besotted, that he preferred all sorts of Theatricall Actors and Players to the highest Honours and most eminent Dignities; making L. Generall of his Armies one that in his Youth was a publike Dancer on the Theater. He appointed one Stage-player, Trainer and Guardian* of the young Lords and

* Wrestling, a Princely Exercise.

Stage-players preferred.

* Or Master of the Wards.

and Gentlemen; another, to be Lord President of his Councell; and a third, Generall of the Horse. He aduanced to the chiefest places of Trust in the Empire, Charret-driuers, Comœdians, and Histrionicall Iesters; bestowing on his Seruants and * Libertines that were most extremely debauched, the Procuratorships of Prouinces. At this mad and drunken Distribution of so many Honourable Offices, all men murmured, but especially the Souldiers stormed, and scorned him, as being more effeminate than an honest Woman would be; and detested him for prostituting the Imperiall Maiestie to contempt, by his capricious Dresses, golden Gewgawes, and publike Reuells. They were therefore more inclinable to *Alexander*, conceiuing faire hopes of him for his Noble and Vertuous Education; and conseruing him diligently from the insidious Practices of *Antonine*. His Mother *Mammaea* suffered him not to taste any meat or drink that he lent. His Cookes and Cup-bearers were not those that waited on the Empe-

* Bondmen set free.

A Politique
Lady.

our, but such trusty servants as his Mother made choice of. Shee gave him also much money in private, to bestow on the Souldiers secretly; to winne them to him with that Bait, which shee knew would soonest catch them. Which *Antonine* understanding, plotted to destroy him and his Mother; but his Plots were prevented by their common Grand-mother *Mesa*; a subtil Woman, and a Politique Dame; as having lived many years in the Imperial Palace, with her sister *Julia*, wife to *Sene-ru*, whereby she was well read in State affaires. For she knew all the Designs of *Antonine*, who was naturally a Blab, and would ordinarily lay himselfe open, and divulge all his Intentions. When he could not surprize him by Treachery, he determined to strip him of his *Cæsarean* Dignitie; not permitting him to be saluted, or goe abroad. Then the Souldiers enquired for him, and were much discontented, that he should be deposed. Whereupon *Antonine* disperses a Fame, that *Alexander* was like to die; to try how the Souldiers would take it.

it. They, when they could not see the young Prince, were cut to the heart with the Report; and being infinitely enraged, sent not the usuall Guards to *Antonine*, but lockt themselves in the Campe; demanding to see *Alexander* in their Temple. *Antonine* startled at this, takes *Alexander*, and places him with him in his Imperiall Carroach, richly adorned with Gold and Gemmes; and hies to the Campe. The Souldiers opening the Gates, received them, and conducted them to the Temple of the Campe; exceedingly congratulating and welcoming *Alexander*, but coldly saluting *Antonine*; which he storming at, after he had lodged all night in the Camp-Temple; was so incensed at the Souldiers, for doing such speciall Honour to *Alexander*, that he commanded the chiefe and most noted (for it) to be apprehended and executed as Authors of Sedition and Mutinie. Whereat all the Souldiers being exasperated, and having formerly hated *Antonine*, they resolved to rescue their Fellowes, and put away that abominable Prince.

Antonine slain.

Prince. Iudging this therefore to be a iust Occasion, and faire Opportunity ; they presently slew *Antonine*, and his mother *Soemis*, who was with him (as Empresse) with all their Priuadoes, and Instruments of lewdnesse that came with them into the Campe. Then deliuered they to the People, the Carcasses of *Antonine* and *Soemis* ; which being disgracefully dragged a long time ouer all the Citie, and lastly dismembred, were throwne into the publike lakes, which are voided into the Riuer *Tyber**. The Souldiers proclaiming *Alexander* Emperour, conducted him to the Royall Palace ; being very young, and yet in the Tuition of his Mother and Grand-mother.

as Sec.

The End of the Fifth Booke.

Appendix to *Herodians* fift Booke of his HISTORY.

To the Readers.

Herodian hauing liuely drawne (in little) that Monster of Eth-
nike Priests and Princes, PSEVD-ANTONINE, I haue
thought good to adioyne (for your further satisfaction) this en-
suing *Delineation* of him; extracted out of diuers ancient and prin-
cipall Authors.

His Apparell was extreme Braue and Gor-
geous : yet he neuer wore one Garment
twice. His Shooes were embellisht with
Diamonds, and Orientall Pearles of the
most Caracts. His Seats were strewed with Muske and
Amber. His Beds were couered with Cloth of Gold
tissued on Purple, and embossed with Gems of inestimable
Value. His Way was strewed with filings of Gold
and Siluer. His Vessels, euen of basest use, were of
Obryze Gold. His Lamps burned with pretious Balmes
and Gums of India and Arabia. His Fish-ponds were
filled with Rose-water. His Ships in his Theatricall
Sea-fights, floated in Riuers of Wine. His Bathes,
most magnificently built, when he had once vsed them,
were still pluckt downe ; and new built. His Plate, of
refined Masseine Gold ; but neuer serued twice to his Ta-
ble. His Rings and Jewels infinitely rich ; yet neuer
worne

* Bathing
was as or-
dinary with
Romans, as
Eating and
Sleeping.
See an Anti-
quity of a Ro-
mane Bath or
Stoue (lately

APPENDIX.

worne twice. His Concubines numberlesse, but neuer
laine with twice. Euery Supper in his Court cost 1000
pounds sterling. When he lay neere to the Sea, he
would eat no Fish: When he was furthest in the Conti-
nent, he would eat no Flesh. Whole Meales were fur-
nished with Tongues of Singing Birds, and Braines of
rarest Creatures. All Europe, Asia, and Afrike, with the
Ilands adiacent; in a word, the Globe of Earth and
Sea (whereof he was LORD PARAMOUNT) was not able to fill this GULPH. In his Progresses,
he was attended by 600 Charrets fraught with Concu-
bines, Catamites, and Pandars: for whom, he built a
Seraglio in his Court; where himselfe (in the habit of a
Curtezan) used to make solempne Speeches to them,
terming them, his Braue Fellow-Souldiers and Compa-
nions in Armes. [What gallant Instructions he gaue
them, I forbear to mention] He caused to be ga-
thered in Rome ten thousand Weight of Spiders, ten
thousand Mice, and a thousand Polecats; which he ex-
hibited to the Roman Peeres and People, in a publike
Show and Solemnitie: professing, that now wee per-
fectly vnderstood, how mighty a City Rome was.
Lastly, [to omit other more strange Prankes] he
summoned a Parliament of Women, to consult about
Tires, Fashions, Dresses, Tinctures, and the like
Weighty and Important Affaires.

FINIS.



HERODIAN His IMPERIALL HISTORY.

THE SIXT BOOKE.

The Contents.

Alexander Emperour. The
Religion and State reformed.
Mæsa deified. Alexanders Elogie.
His Mariage. Persians invade the
Romanes. Alexander writes to the
Persian; who scornes his Lotters.
Generall Muster in Italy. Alexan-
der marches against the Parthian.
An Embassie. Another brauing
Aaa Em-

Embassie. Embassadors punished. Alexanders policy. Archery. Armenian Mountaines. The Romanes defeated. Alexander retires. Best physicke for Souldiers. Germany rebels. Alexander comes to the Rhine. Archers. Herald. Maximine described and elected Emperor. Alexander slaine.

*Alexander Em-
perour.*



*Mesa and
Mamea Re-
gents.*

WE haue formerly declared in what manner *Antonine* (the elder brother) ended his dayes. After him *Alexander* had the Title and Ornaments of Emperour; but the Management of Affaires, and Regency of the Empire rested in *Mesa* and *Mamea*; who laboured to reduce all things to better Order and Moderation.

And first they selected out of the Senate 16 ancient, graue, and honorable Beeres, for Assistants and Counsellors to the

the Prince: without whose Suffrage and Consent, nothing was to passe as an Act of State. Which manner of Government was wondrous pleasing to the People, Souldiers, and Senators; the Empire being thereby reduced from an iniurious Tyranny, to the forme of an * *Optimacy*.

Their prime care was to restore the Images of the Gods (remoued and displaced by *Antonine*) to their owne ancient Temples and Oratories. Next, all that he had aduanced to Honours and Offices, either without desert, or for their lewd pranks; they discharged and degraded; commanding euery of them to follow their former Trades and Professions. All Ciuill and Iudiciary Offices they bestowed on famous learned Men and excellent Lawyers: and all Places of Marriall command they gaue to braue Noble Captains, and Souldiers, expert in * *Marshalling* of Armies, and Military Exploits.

The Empire being thus administered a long time, *Mesa* being now very old, deceased, and was buried like an Empreffe;

** A Govern-
ment of the prin-
cipall men.
Religion first
reformed.*

*Next, the
State.*

*N.B.
* ἐν εὐτακτίᾳ
τῇ καὶ πολιτείᾳ
καὶ ἀρετῇ.
In which words
the excellent
Author hath com-
prehended both the
parts of warre:
viz. Taclicke and
Stratagematicke.
Mesa dies,
and is deified.*

* At a Womens
deification they
used a Peacocks
(into which they
supposed her
soule to sit :)
as an Eagle at a
Mans. See this
Supreme Solem-
nity described in
the beginning of
the 4 Booke of
this History.

* *Alexander*

*Alexanders
Elogy.*

being after the Roman fashion, deified.
Mamma being now sole Regent and
Guardian of her Son, followed still the
same track of Government. When hee
came to his Age, to manage the State him-
selfe, shee fearing lest his vnstaied youth
might in that height of Liberty and So-
uerainty, precipitate him into the Vices
and Vanities incident thereto; set a strong
Watch about the Court, prohibiting all
leud and loose persons from his presence,
lest his good nature should be corrupted,
and his minde prouoked to lust, by be-
witching Syrens, and fawning Parasites.
Shee perswaded him also to attend matters
of Iudicature * the best part of the day; to
keepe him from Idlenesse, the Mistresse of
all Lewdnesse. *Alexander* (indeed) was
naturally adorned with Affability, Cle-
mency, and other Princely Graces, (as
was afterwards apparant in the course of
his Life.) For in 14 yeares, his Empire
was not stained with blood: not one be-
ing put to death (by him) all the while.
And though diuers were convict of har-
gious

nous Crimes, yet he spared their Lives:
which you shall hardly finde to haue bin
done by any Emperour since *Marcus*.
None can remember that in all the time
of his Reigne, there was any executed
without Iudiciall Processe. He much bla-
med his Mother, and was very angry
with her, for her greedy couetousnesse of
money, and accumulating of riches. For
Mamma pretending to hoord vp Coine
to supply *Alexanders* bounty to the Soul-
diers, got a great masse of Treasure to her
selfe. Which although it were much dis-
liked in her, and condemned by the Em-
perour: yet did her fraudulent practises in
spoiling many of their Goods and Estates
reflect on him to his obloquy and disho-
nour. Shee gaue him a wife of a Noble
Familie; whom he dearly loued: but she
soone after banisht her the Court. For
arrogating to her selfe alone the Title of
Empresse; and maligning her Daughter-
in-law's Honour, she proceeded to that
outrage, that the young Empresses Father,
though in great esteeme with *Alexander*,

His Mariage.

(his sonne in law) not able to endure the many Wrongs she did him and his daughter, fled into the Campe: professing, hee was much obliged to the Emperour for doing him that honour: but accusing *Mammae*, for her opprobrious iniuries. Whereat, she being the more exasperated, commanded him to be slaine, and hauing expelled the young Lady from the Court, confined her to Africke. All which was done without *Alexanders* consent, and meerely against his will: for his Mother caried a high and imperious hand ouer him, and he tenderly reuer'd and obeyed her in all things: so that his maine Error was, too much Softnesse, and ouer great Obsequiousnesse to his Mother, in things which himselfe disapproued.

Hauing thus ruled the Empire thirteene yeares, without any Griouance (in regard of his owne particular) suddenly in the foureteenth yeare, there came Letters from the Presidents of Syria and Mesopotamia, certifying; That *Artaxerxes King of Persia* hauing conquered the Parthians,

ans, and slaine *Artabanus* (who was the first that was called The great King, and wore a double Diadem) did likewise subdue and make Tributary, the bordering Barbarians: and not containing himselfe within the Riuer *Tigris*, had transpassed the bankes and bounds of the Romane Empire, and made a roade into Mesopotamia, threatening to inuade Syria, and challenging the * opposite Continent to Europe (limited by the *Aegean* sea, and *Propontick* gulse, and called Asia) as the ancient Patrimony of the Persians: in that from *Cyrus* (who first translated the Empire of the Medes to the Persians) vntill *Darius* the last Persian King (deposed by *Alexander*) all those Countries, as farre as *Ionia* and *Caria*, were ruled by Persian Vice-roies: and therefore he held himselfe bound (in Honor) to recouer all that which was anciently vnder the Persian Scepter. When *Alexander* receiued this disinal newes from the Easterne parts, he was not a little perplext and troubled; hauing beene euer trained (from a childe) in peace and tranquillity, and nuzled in City-Delights: Advising therefore with his Counsell, he first resolued

The Parthian King slunc.

A double Diadem.

The Persians inuade the Romanes.

* The lesser Asia.

Alexanders Letters to the Persian.

The Persian scorns them.

ued to send Embassadours with letters to stop the Barbarians proceedings. The letters were to this effect: That hee ought to containe himselfe within his bounds: and not in vaine hope of new Conquests, raise warres and stirres. That euery one ought to rest content with his owne estate. That he would find great difference in fight betwixt Romanes and his fellow Barbarians. Lastly, hee puts him in mind of the victories which Augustus, Traiane, Lucius and Seuerus had obtain'd against them. With these letters Alexander perswaded himselfe he should ouer-rule the Barbarian, and make him quiet. But he scorning them, and holding it his best course to fight rather the talk, was now more rampant then euer: ranging ouer all Mesopotamia, taking great booties, & assailing the Romane camps that were pitcht on the riuer bāks, to defend the limits of the Empire. Being also naturally of a high spirit and haughty mind, which by his sudden successe was much more eleuated, hee thought he should conquer all afore him. He had great encouragements to enlarge his

his Dominions: being the first that attempted the Parthians, and recouered the Kingdome to the Persians: for after Darius, whom Alexander the Macedon conquered, the Macedonians and Alexanders successors for many yeares diuided among them the Principality of the orientall Prouinces ouer all Asia. But when by their ciuill warres and discords, the Macedonians and the rest were weakened, Arfaces the Parthian did (as they say) first perswade the barbarous people of these Countreys to reuolt from the Macedonians: and being crowned King by the Parthians and adioyning Barbarians, hee held the kingdome: and left it to his Posterity, which enioyed it vntill the raigne of Artabannus (in our time) slaine by Artaxerxes, who reunited that kingdome to the Persian Monarchy, and hauing brought in subiection the adiacent Barbarians, began to trench on the Romane Territories. Which Alexander vnderstanding, and knowing it concerned him in a high degree of Iustice and Honour, not

to suffer the insolent Barbarian any longer, (his Commanders earnestly importuning him to come in person) with much adoë at last hee prepares to set forward (against his owne inclination:) and now there were general musters through all Italy, and the Romane Prouinces, of the strongest and ablest persons for the warres; great hurliburlies being in all parts of the Empire, about training the choicest that might be found, to encounter the barbarous Multitude. Alexander assembling into the Field all the souldiers which were quartered neere the City, spake thus to them from his Throne:

A generall
muster.

Alexanders speech to the Army.

I Could wish (my Braue Fellow-souldiers) that I might as heretofore speak such things to you, as were to my Applause & your Content. It may be that after so long Peace, an unexpected Warre, may somewhat dismay you.

“ But

“ But, it is the part of generous and
“ temperate men to pray for the Best; ^{in words.}
“ and be content with that which happens; For as those things which we
“ performe with pleasure, are delightful:
“ full: So valiant exploits necessarily undertaken, are most glorious:
“ And as hee that first offers wrong,
“ deserues small fauour: So he that
“ redresses a wrong is more confident;
“ as hauing a good conscience; and
“ more couragious, in that hee offers
“ not wrong, but repells it. Artaxerxes the Persian hauing traiterously slaine his Soueraigne, Artabanus; and translated his Kingdome to the Persians; hath presumed also to bid vs battell, and in despite of the Romane Maiestie, hath begun to inuade and destroy our Prouinces. At first, I thought good, to write to him, to de-

sist from that insatiate fury of coveting other mens estates: But he in his barbarous pride is so farre from containing himselfe in his owne limits; that he challenges us to fight. Let us not therefore refuse the Challenge, nor fore-slow the War; but you, which are Veteranes, make him know, that you are they that vnder the conduct of Seuerus and my father Antonine, got those famous Victories over the Barbarians. And you which are yong souldiers must strive for Honor and Glory, that all may know, you are not only well disciplin'd to obey in time of Peace, but that also in time of Warre, when need requires you are able to make full demonstration of your Valour. The Barbarians are very fierce against them that shrink, or come on slowly: but if they be furiously

ously charged, they are soone calmed. For it is not their manner to attempt the Victory by pitcht Battels: but to make sudden prædatory Excursions, and then runne away: thinking they haue gained sufficiently by forraging the Country. But we with our faire and well-ordered Armies, haue euer put them to the worst, and returned Conquerors.

Alexander hauing thus said, the souldiers by their generall Cry exprest their alacritie, and readinesse to march: Wherefore giuing them large Pay, hee commands them to prepare for the voyage, and hauing made another speech (of like effect) to the Senate, he appoints a day for his departure: which being come, and the vsuall Sacrifices & Ceremonies performed, (all the Senate and City attending him) he departs from Rome, often looking back towards the City, and weeping. Neither

was there any of the people which parted from him with dry eies : so dearely were they deuoted to him, being bred amongst them, and hauing raigned so many years with such rare moderation. With speedy journeyes hee visited the Illyrian Nations and Armies, and taking great forces from thence, with him, he marched to *Antioch* : where hee made diligent preparation for all warlike necessaries, still attending the trayning of souldiers, and other Martiall Exercises. Here againe (hoping to end the Warre by Treaty) hee sent another Embassie to the Persian King, to conclude a Peace, and contract a League with him. For being come so farre in person, he was in hope, either to perswade him, or at least to terrifie him. But the Barbarian Prince proudly reiects the Romane Embassadors : & sends 400 of his tallest Persians in braue & rich attire as Heralds or Embassadors mounted on goodly coursers with their gay Bowes and Arrowes, thinking the Romanes would be daunted with the sight and habit of the Persians. His Embassage

He marches to
Antioch.

An Embassie.

basstage was this, *The great King Artaxerxes commands the Romans and their Prince, to depart out of all Syria, and Asia * that is opposite to Europe; to permit the Persians to rule as farre as Ionia and Caria, and ouer all those Countries which are diuided by the Aegean and Ponticke Sea, & by patrimonial right belong to the Persians.* These 400 Embassadors *Alexander* commanded to bee apprehended; & stripping them of their Persian gallantry, banisht them into Phrygia, assigning them certaine villages for dwelling, and fields for tillage : contenting himselfe to punish them by debarring their returne into their natiue Countrey; it being (as he thought) an * vnholly deed, and vnmanly act to put them to death that fought not, but onely executed their Soueraignes Command. This done, *Alexander* being about to passe ouer the Riuers and lead his Army into the Barbarians Countrey, many Egyptian souldiers reuolted from him; and others began to make a commotion in Syria : but they were soone suppressed and punished. *Alexander* also sent some

A brauing Embassie.

* Asia minor.

Embassadors punished.

* α'νομιαν.

Alexanders
policy.

some forces into other Countries to prevent the Barbarians incursions. All which things being set in order, and having now a great Army, (not inferior to the Enemy) he diuided it (by his Counsels aduise) into three Battalions: commanding one to march Northward, through *Armenia*, (which seem'd to bee in friendly termes with the Romanes) and that way to inuade the Borders of *Media*: another likewise, to passe by North through the Barbarian Countreys, where *Tigris* and *Euphrates* meet, and are drowned in great Marishes and Lakes; whence it is vnkowne how they are dis-emboged; The third, being the best part of the Army himselfe vndertooke to lead against the Barbarians, and assaile them in the midst. By this meanes, he thought to take them vnprovidd, inuading them seuerall waies, and that the Persian forces would be much distracted and weakned, and so lesse able to resist the Romanes by being dispersed to incounter them in places so farre determinate. For the Barbarians haue

haue no mercenary Bands (as the Romanes vse) nor any set Campes or veterane Armies that are still exercised in Martiall Discipline: but all their men (and women too sometimes) are mustered together at the Kings command: and after the Warre, returne to their houses, taking (for their Pay) all the Booties they get. They vse shooting and riding, not onely Archery: (as the Romanes) in Warre, but (euen from their Childhood) in hunting for their food: vsing their Bowes perpetually on horsebacke, whether they follow the Warres, or pursue wilde beastes. This plot of *Alexander*, though it were plausible; proued not fortunate: For the Armie that marcht through *Armenia*, hauing with great difficultie climbed ouer the extreme steep & craggy Mountains of that Region (which they did the better, in regard it was Summer) entred *Media*, where they burnt many Villages, and got much pillage. Which the Persian King vnderstanding, hastned against them with all his Power. But they could not impeach

The Armenian
Mountaines.

C c c

the

the Romanes, by reason of the hillinesse and roughnesse of the Countrie, which was more firme and passable for Footmen: but a maine hindrance to the Barbarian Horse. Then came other newes to the King that another Armie of the Romanes had entred the Parthian Dominions Eastward, and wasted the Countrie. Fearing therefore, lest hauing soone conquered the Parthians, they should inuade Persia, hee left as many Troopes as (hee thought) were sufficient to defend Media, and posts with a puissant Host to the East parts. The Romane Armie when they saw none come against them, began to be more negligent in their march; supposing that *Alexander* had with the third part of the Army (which was the strongest) inuaded the Barbarians in the middle. Resting therefore and reposing themselves, they supposed there needed no hast; as not doubting, but that all the Army did come on, according to the first determination; to which purpose a place was assigned as a Rendezuous for themselves, the Prey and

and prisoners which they should take. But *Alexander* disappointed them: for he neither went himselfe nor sent the Army: whether for feare of losing his life in defending the Empire; or whether his mother out of a Feminine feare and fondnes detained him, is vncertaine. Vndoubtedly she did much abate his noble Courage, perswading him rather to expose others to danger, then himselfe to the fortune of Warre. By which meanes, the Romane Army that had entred the Barbarians Country, was meerely betrayed. For the Persian King leading all his forces against them ere they were aware, and taking them as it were in a Net, gaue them an absolute Defeat: for being few, they could not withstand so many: but guarding as well as they could the open parts of their bodies (with their Armes) against the shot of the Arrowes, they supposed they acquitted themselves well, if making no resistance, they escaped safe. But hauing for some space defended themselves (by ioyning their Targets together) as

The Romanes
deleated.

with a Wall, and being like a City assaulted on euery side, and grievously wounded, at last, after a long and braue Resistance, they were euery man slaine. The losse of which great Army (which might well be compared to any of the Ancient, for Valour or Fidelity, was a mighty and vnspeakable Calamity to the Romanes. But the Persian pust vp with so good success, bare his Crest aloft, & aspir'd to higher matters. Which when *Alexander* heard, being then very sicke (either for grieve of Minde, or vnwholsomenesse of the Aire) he tooke it exceeding heauily: and all the Army was grievously offended with the Emperor: in that by disappointing his men, he had so foully betrayed them. But *Alexander* not able to endure his sicknesse nor that hote Clime, which afflicted all the Army, and especially the Illyrians (who hauing beene vsed to a cold and moist Ayre, fed more plentifully then the rest) purposed to dismarch to *Antioch*: and send for those few Souldiers that remained of them that perisht (amongst the Moun-

Mountaines) by extremity of the Winter-season. The Companies that *Alexander* had with him, he brought backe to *Antioch*: hauing lost many of them also: to his infinite Dishonour, and the Souldiers Discontentment; Fortune failing him euery where. For the most part of his threefold Army (for so he diuided it) perisht diuersly, either by sicknesse, sword, or cold.

Alexander being come to *Antioch*, and hauing soone recovered his health by the change of Ayre, (*Mesopotamia* being extreme hot, but *Antioch* much cooler, and well watered with dainty Fountaines) hee refresht his Army, and reuiu'd their drooping spirits with great store of coine, (for that he held to be the onely Preseruation to assure the Souldiers loue.) Here he raised new Forces, as if he meant to lead another Armie against the Persians, if they were further troublesome and distressed not from their Enterprises. But hee receiued intelligence, that the Persian King had dismissed all his Souldiers to their

Alexander retires to *Antioch*.

Pilule aurea, the best physick for Souldiers.

owne homes. And though the Barbarians seemed to haue got the vpper-hand, yet were they exceedingly waisted with those frequent skirmishes and battells in Media and Persia: and they which suruiued, were (for the most part) grievously wounded and much weakned. For the Romanes which fell, sold their liues full dearly, and slew not a few of their enemies, though they were but a handfull in comparison of them; in so much, that there were almost as many slaine of the Barbarians as of the Romanes, who were not inferiour to them in valour, but number. And this was a certaine signe of the Barbarians great losse; that they took not Armes, nor offered to stirre for three or foure yeares after.

Alexander thus aduertised, during his abode at Antioch, and being disburthened of the irksome care of War; he was much more free and frolick, and gaue himselfe to the City-pastimes and Pleasures. And now while hee was confident, that the Persians would be quiet, or at least, that they

they would not (in hast) re-assemble their Forces, which are rather a confused multitude, then a well-ordered Army (for they haue no other prouision, then what euery man brings from home for present vse; and are also very loath to leaue their Wiues, Children, and Possessions) there came Postes with Letters from the Procurators of Illyria, which troubled Alexander, and perplext him more then euer: for they certified him, *That the Germanes* The Germanes rebell. *hauing past the Rhine, and Ister, had inuaded the Romane Frontiers, assaulted the Armies vpon the Bankes, and made great hauocke in the Cities and Villages: to the great hazard of the Illyrian Regions adiacent, and abutting on Italy: that his Presence therefore was mainly necessary, together with the whole Army.*

This Newes amazed Alexander, and griued the Illyrians: being twice miserable; by their late Discomfiture in the Persian Expedition, and the Slaughter of their Countrymen by the Germane Incur-sions. They were therefore exceedingly enrag'd at the Emperour for betraying the

the Affairs of the East by his Feare or Negligence, and for delaying to succour the North, being so earnestly called vpon. And now *Alexander* and his Counsell began to mis-doubt Italy: which was in greater danger of the Germanes then the Persians. For the remote Nations of the Leuant, so farre dis-ioyned by Sea and Land, scarce heare of the Name of Italy: but the Illyrian Dominions being of small Extent, and consisting but of a few Provinces, are the onely barre betwixt Italy and Germanie. Being compelled therefore by Necessitie, hee much against his will proclaimes his Expedition: and leauing as many Companies as he thought sufficient to guard the Romane Frontiers, (hauing well manned and fortified the Campos, Sconces, and other præsidarie places) he hastens with the rest of the Armie against the Germanes. Hauing ended his Iourney with great speed, he encamped on the banks of the Rhine, and there made prouision for the Germane Warre. He made a Bridge of Ships and Barges for

Alexander
comes to the
Rhine.

for the more easie passage of his Army ouer the Riuer: *Rhenus* and *Ister* being the greatest Riuers of the North: the one running through Germany, the other through Pannonie. In Summer they are nauigable, by reason of their deep & broad Chānels: but in Winter they are so frozen, that they are ridden ouer, as if they were Plains: the Ice being so firme and thick, that it beares not onely Horse and Man, but they also which want water, bring not with them Pitchers, or other Vessels; but Axes and Hatchets, wherewith they hew out water, and cary it thence like Stones. *Alexander* had in his Army diuers Regiments of Moores, and a goodly Band of Archers which he brought out of the East; some from the *Osroenes* Countrey; others, that were Parthian Fugitiues, or Stipendaries, which he sent against the Germans, who were much infested by the: for the Moors cast their Darts at a great Distance, & are very dest & nimble in running to and fro: and the Archers standing a farre off, easily hit the naked Heads & vast bodies of the

Moores generally nimble footed.

Archers.

Germanes; being faire Markes to shoot at. Sometimes also they came to Hand-strokes; wherein the Germanes were (oft) not inferior to the Romanes. While these things were on foot, *Alexander* sent Embassadors to them to treat of Peace, and to assure them that they should want nothing that they needed, and that they should be well furnisht with Money. For the Germans are soonest perswaded with that, being very greedy of *Gold*, and euer ready to chaffer Peace with the Romanes for Gold. *Alexander* therefore assayed rather to buy a League, then to hazard himselfe in the Warre. But his Souldiers were much discontented, that they spent their time vainely, and were not led to some braue Seruice or gallant Enterprise. *Alexander* (as they said) caring more to follow his Charretting and Reuelling, then to pursue or punish the presumptuous Germans, (as concerned him.) Now there was in the Army one *Maximine* borne in an obscure Village of the innermost part of *Thrace*, a Semi-Barbarian, and

Embassadors.

Maximine described.

and which in his yonger Age had beene bred a Shepherd; after, being at Mans estate, hee was for his bulke and strength appointed to serue in the Warres among a Troope of Horse; soone after, Fortune leading him by the hand, hee passed through all Militarie Preferments, to the Command of Armies and Prouinces. This *Maximine*, was for his singular skill in the Exercise of Armes, made Captaine by *Alexander*, ouer all the yong souldiers; to the end to traine and make them fit for Seruice. Who performing his Taske with care and diligence was very gracious with all the Army. For hee did not onely teach them what they should doe, but himselfe did by his owne Example, daily instruct them: whereby they became not only his Schollers, but also zealous imitators of his Valour, being obliged to him by Donatures, and all manner of Honours. These young Souldiers (whereof many were Pannonians) applauded *Maximine* for his prowesse; but scorned *Alexander*, as being still VVard to

* *Charities*

D'd d a

his

his Mother, and wholly subiect to the Authoritie and will of a Woman, which made him so slowly and vnmanlie to prosecute the VVars: whereby, the Orientall Expedition miscaried: and nothing (in effect) was done against the Germanes. And now being naturally prone to Innouation, and wearied with the long Reigne of the Prince, which was but little beneficiall to them (there being no Competitors for the Empire) hoping also that if some other were made Emperour (beyond his expectation) it would be more for their profit and preferment; they resolu'd to kill *Alexander*, and elect *Maximine* Emperor, who was their comrado and fellow in Armes, and for his Martiall skill and valor fittest for the present VVarre. Assembling therefore into the Field in Armes when *Maximine* came (as his manner was) to traine them, they inuest him with purple, and salute him Emperour, which whether it were so complotted, or hee were ignorant of their Intentions, it is vncertaine. At first hee refused

Maximine
electd Empe-
rour.

fused and threw away the Purple. But when the Souldiers brandisht their Cymiters, threatening to kill him if hee yeelded not, he chose rather to auoid the present then future perill, and accepted the Honour; which (hee said) had beene offore told him by Oracles and Dreames: protesting withall to the Souldiers, that it was much against his will, yet he would submit to their Importunitie: And seeing they would needs haue it so, he wisht them instantly to take Armes, and before the Rumour were blazed, to surprise *Alexander* that knew nothing of it; that his Souldiers and Guard being astonisht with the Newes, might either bee drawne to their partie, or being taken vnprovidcd, compelled to yeeld. Then cheering all the Army, with promising them a double Portion of Corne, extraordinarie Donatiues, and Remission of all punishments & penalties, he leads them straight towards *Alexanders* Pauillion, not farre thence; who, when he heard of it, was mightily amazed, and leapt forth of his

Royall Tent like a mad man ; weeping and trembling, and accusing *Maximine* as perfidious and vngratefull for all the Honours he had done him ; and the young Souldiers as periur'd and disloyall for conspiring with him. Lastly, he promised to giue what they would haue, and amend whatsoeuer was amisse.

The Souldiers that were with him, comforting him for the present, said they would stand for him to the vttermost. When the night was past, and it was now day, Newes comming that *Maximine* was at hand, that a great Duff was scene, and a huge Multitude heard not farre off, *Alexander* went againe into the Plaine, and assembling the Souldiers, besought them to protect and defend him that was bred vp by them, and had reigned 14 yeares without harming any : whereat, all commiserating him, he commanded them to take Armes and charge the Enemie. But the Souldiers, though they gaue him good words, yet slip away one after another, and would not fight. Some wisht the

Pra-

Prætorian Præfect and *Alexanders* Courtiers might be executed, imputing the mutinie to them. Others laid all the blame on his Mother, which by her insatiable Auarice and base Niggardice (in scanting the Souldiers) had made *Alexander* odious. Thus for some while they parlyed and argued, but marched not. When *Maximines* Army came in sight, and beganne to perswade them to leaue that wretched Woman, and punie Prince, that was still vnder his Mothers wing ; and adhere to a valiant Souldier and braue Commander, that was their owne Companion in Armes, and an excellent Master in the Art Militarie ; they all presently reuolted from *Alexander*, and with one voice proclaimed *Maximine* Emperour. *Alexander* in great Feare and Distraction returnes to his Pauilion, where hanging on his Mother, and ~~(as they say)~~ ^{becoming} his Infortunity, which happened by her means, he expected his Deaths-man. *Maximine* being saluted *Augustus* by all the Armie, commanded the Knight Marshalls and

some

Extreme calamities confound the spirit.

Or Tribune.

*Alexanders
flaue.*

** alexandri
flaue.*

some Centurions, to put *Alexander* and his Mother to death, and all that resisted. Whereupon they rusht into his Tent and slew him with his Mother, Friends, and Counsellors : except them that a little before escaped by Flight or Concealement : which yet soone after were all apprehended and slaughtered by *Maximine*. This end had *Alexander* and his Mother, hauing reigned 14 yeares without * blame or blood. For hee abhorred Murther and Crueltie ; and was so milde and temperate, that he suffered none to die, but those that were condemned by Law: And had not his miserable Mother blasted his Honour by her sordid Demeanour, there had beene nothing wanting to haue rendred him a most excellent Prince.

The end of the sixth Booke.



HERODIAN

His

IMPERIAL L

HISTORY.

THE SEVENTH BOOKE.

The Contents.

Magnus. *Quartinus made
Emperour against his will.
Macedon a base Traitor. Germans
good Swimmers and Souldiers. A
terrible Battell in a Poole, betwixt
Romanes and Germanes. Informers
and Catchpoles fomented by Maxi-
mine. His Couetousnesse, Cruelty,
and Sacrilege. The Romanes Deuo-
E e e tion.*

tion. Afrike revolts. A speech to Gordian; elected Emperour. Vitalian slaine. Insurrection at Rome. Sabinus slaine. Maximines Flies and Spies: His speech to the Army. His Expedition to Italic. Capellian defeats the Carthagenians. Prince Gordian elected and slaine. The Emperour Gordian strangles himselfe. The Romanes solempne Parliament in Ioues Temple. Maximus and Albinus elected Emperours by the Senate, and reielected by the Commons. The Commons deluded. Gordian Caesar. Souldiers slaine. A Commotion at Rome. Fencers slain. A Councell of War. A Generall Pardon. A Stratagem. Rome fired.

Wa



E haue shewed in the former Booke, how *Alexander* demeaned himselfe in his 14 yeares Reigne, and how hee died. *Maximine* hauing attained the Soueraignty, there followed a strange alteration. For he caried himselfe in such rough and terrible sort, that the Empire was now false from a faire calme Rule, to a stormy blustering Tyrannie. Knowing now he should be generally preiudged, because he was the first that was raised from the lowest Step, to the highest State; and being also a Barbarous Caitife and Villaine of birth, and by Education, Custome, and Condition, giuen to blood; his chiefe Care was to settle himselfe in the Empire by Cruelty: supposing hee should bee (otherwise) contemptible to the Romane Senate and Subjects, who would not so much consider his present Fortune, as the baseness of his Parentage: for all men knew that (first) he was a Shepheard in the Mountaines of Thrace: and that after, being (for his Vast-

E c c 2

ness

nesse and Actiuitie) prest for a Souldier among his poore Countymen, hee was led by the hand (as it were) of Fortune, to the Romane Empire : wherefore hee instantly * *discomposed* all *Alexanders* Counsellors and Assistants that were chosen by the Senate; sending some of them to Rome; and depriving others of their Offices, vpon pretence of mis-gouernment. Which he purposedly did, that being rid of all which were his betters (in birth) he might the more freely and vncontrolably practise (in his Armie, as in a strong Arcenall) all kind of Tyranny, without regard to any. He banisht also from the Court, all *Alexanders* seruants, that had so many yeares waited, and put many of them to death vpon misprision of Treason, because they mourned for their old Master. But that which set a keene edge vpon his Tyranny, was an information, that many Captains and all the Romane Senate conspired against him.

Magnus.

There was one *Magnus* a very Noble Gentleman that had beene Consull; who
was

was accused to the Emperour that he raised a Faction against him, and dealt with the Souldiers to make him selfe Emperour. The plot was said to be this : *Maximine* had built a bridge ouer the Riuer to go against the Germanes : for as soone as hee came to the Soueraignty, hee presently applyed him selfe to the Warres. For being elected to the Empire for his huge bulke, approued valour, & skill in Military Affaires, he intended by deeds of Armes, to confirme the Soldiers in their good opinion, & to make the world know, that *Alexanders* feare and * Retardation of the War, was iustly to be condemned. VVherefore he spared no paines to muster and traine the souldiers, and being still in Armes him selfe, he mightily encouraged the Army. Hauing made the Bridge, he purposed to passe into Germany. But *Magnus* was reported to haue perswaded many of the best souldiers (who had the charge of guarding the Bridge) that as soone as *Maximine* were passed ouer, they should cut it downe, and so (preuenting his Returne)

turne) betray him to the Barbarians. For so deepe and broad was the Riuer, that it was impossible he should retreat, (there being no ships on the other side.)

This was the rumour, but whether true, or fained by *Maximine*, is vnder-taine: for it is hard to determine any thing therein; all that were suspected, being suddenly apprehended and cruelly slaine without Iudiciall Proceffe or Pleading. But now the *Ostroene* Archers began to reuolt. For being much griued at *Alexanders* murther, & meeting (by chance) with *Quartinus* one of *Alexanders* Friends (dismissed but a little before by *Maximine*) they laid hold on him, and vterly against his will made him their Chiefe, & honoring him with the fatall Ornaments of Purple, and Fire caried before him; they proclaimed him Emperour, that neither knew of it before, nor thought of it: howbeit, soone after sleeping in his Tent hee was suddenly slaine by one that had beene his Companion, and (as some say) his affied Friend: whose name was *Macedon*, the Cap-

Quartinus.

Macedon.

Captaine of the *Ostroens*, and the first mover of their Reuolt from *Maximine*. And though hee had no Cause nor quarrell at all against him; yet he slew him, whom himselfe had compelled to take vpon him the Empire. Then, thinking he should be wondrous welcome to *Maximine*, hee brought him *Quartinus* head for a Present. *Maximine* being glad to see it, and reioycing that his Enemy was so easily made away; whereas the Actor expected great Thankes and Preferment; he put him to a most cruell Death; as a Ringleader of Rebellion, a murtherer of him that hee had perswaded (against his will) to that Enterprize; and a Traitour to his dearest Friend. These and the like occasions whetted *Maximine* to all Immanity, that (of himselfe) was exceeding bloody. He had a horrible vgly countenance, and such a Cyclopicall Bulke, that no Greeke nor Barbarian Champion was comparable to him. Hauing thus ordered his Affaires, hee leads all his Army with great Courage ouer the Bridge, and makes war vpon

vpon the Germans. A wondrous multitude of people followed him; almost all the Romane Forces, the Moreſco Darters, and many Bands of Archers of the Oſroens and Armenians: (whereof, the firſt are Vaſſalls to the Romans; the latter their Allies and Confederates) as alſo the Mercenary and Fugitiue Parthians, and the Captiues of that Nation that ſerued the Romanes in the Warre. Which confuſed Maſſe, hauing been firſt raked together by *Alexander*, was after augmented and well trained by *Maximine*. Theſe Darters and Archers are very ſeruiſeable againſt the Germanes, becauſe they nimblely ſally forth vpon the Enemy (ere they are aware) and eaſily retreat *into the Groſſe of the Army*. *Maximine* being entered the Enemies Countrey, and finding none to reſiſt him (for all the Barbarians were fled) ſpoiled all the Countrey, (the Corne being now ready to reape) leauing all the Villages to be burnt and pillaged by the Souldiers. Their Cities and Buildings are very apt to take Fire; for the Germanes rarely uſe
to

to build with ſtone or Bricke, their houſes being like ſheds made of Boords and Timber faſtned together. *Maximine* progreſſing in this ſort, burning all the Fields, and giuing all the Cattle to the Souldiers, could yet find no Enemies. For they had leſt all the Champaigne and plaine Countrey, and betaken themſelues to the Woods and Bogges, where they ſkulked ^{Woods and Boggs.} and watched their Aduantage to make an irruption vpon the Enemy: as knowing that the Trees which grew ſo thicke would hinder the Enemies Darts and Arrowes; and the depth of the Bogges would bee dangerous for the Romanes that knew them not: but eaſie and acceſſible to them that well knew where they were paſſable, running daily through them, vp to the knees. The Germanes ^{The Germanes good ſwimmers.} alſo are very ſkilfull ſwimmers, uſing to waſh onely in Riuers. In theſe difficult places began the battle, the Romane Emperour himſelfe moſt brauely giuing the on-ſet. For being come to a mighty great Meare or Marſh whither the Germãs had
Fff fled,

A terrible bat-
tall in a Poole.

fled, the Romans fearing to follow them; *Maximine* was the first that entered with his horse: where, plunging about the horse-belly hee made a great slaughter of the Barbarians that very stoutly resisted. Whereat the Souldiers being abasht lest they should seeme to betray the Emperour, leapt boldly into the Meare, where many on both sides were slaine: (but the Barbarians were almost cut off) the Roman Prince most valiantly fighting in person: insomuch that the Poole being filled vp with Carcasses, and the Fennes all Purpled with Blood, it represented a ghastly and hideous sight of a Sea-fight (as it were) on Land. This battle and his other Martiall Acts the Emperour did not onely certifie by Letters to the Roman Senate and People, but commanded also the Portrait of them (at large) to bee publikely set before the Counsell-house, that the Romanes might not onely heare, but behold also his braue exploits. Which Table (with his other Honours) was afterward taken downe by the Senate.

nate. Other skirmishes there were, in all which, hee fought in the head of his Troopes, and with his owne hands hewed out his Honor. Winter approaching, hee retreated (with many Prisoners, and mighty Booties) into *Pannonia*. Where, in *Sirmium* (the greatest Citie of that Countrey) he lay in Garrison: preparing for a *Spring-Warre*; and often saying (which hee seemed to intend) that hee would exterminate and subdue all the Barbarous Nations of *Germany* to the very Ocean. Such a famous Warriour hee was! And surely great Glory he had got, had hee not beene more bloody & cruell to his owne Subiects then to the Enemies. For what thanks to kill Barbarians, if farre more were murthered in *Rome* it selfe, and the Countries thereto subiect? What good did Barbarous Spoyles or Captiues, if the Inhabitants of the Roman Dominions were daily spoiled of their Fortunes? For Informers were not onely permitted, but egged on also, to circumvent whom they pleased: yea (if neede were) they might

Informers.

Maximins Co-
uetousnesse and
Crucky.

rip vp secret and vnknowne Crimes committed long since in the times of former Emperors. Nor was any indited (of what soeuer offence) but he was instantly convicted and condemned to forsaite all his Goods and Estate: so that you might daily see them that were lately great rich men, now goe abegging. So Tyrannously couetous he was, pretending he needed to pay his Souldiers. His cares were open to all false Suggestions and Informations, without regard to the Grauitie or Dignitie of any. Vpon the least Complaint or Iealousie, hee would suddenly cause to be apprehended braue Consular and Triumphal Commanders of Armies, and Vice-gerents of Prouinces, and to be hurried away alone, day and night, without any of their Seruants or Attendants, from the East, or West, (as it fell out) or from the South, to *Pannonia*, where hee then kept his Court: and after hee had stript them of their Estates, and baffald them with all Indignities and reproaches, he banisht or slew them. While these practises extended

extended onely to some priuate Persons and Families, it seemed not so much to trench vpon the Communalty or any whole Nation. For the Calamities of Great Persons and wealthy men, are not onely sleightly regarded by the Common sort; but many men (out of their depraued dispositions) are so full of malicious Envy against their Betters & Superiours, that they are exceedingly delighted therewith.

But *Maximine* hauing vtterly ruined the Families and Fortunes of many Noble & Honourable Personages, was not so satisfied: but resolved now to inuade the publicke. He seized therefore by his Imperiall Prerogative, all the Stocke of money (in the Chamber or Treasure of the City) that was reserued either to furnish the Citie with Graine, or to bee distributed among the Poore, or to be imployed on Theatricall Showes and publike Solemnities. Hee tooke also out of the Temples, all the sacred Donaries, the Statues of the Gods, the Images of the * Heroes, and what-

His Sacriledge.

* Or Semigods.

whatsoever serued for Ornament to the State, or might be converted into Coine, hee melted it all. Which horrid facts did infinitely rankle and fester the Affections of all Estates; and made as it were a generall Mourning; The Citie being thus pilaged, and all things (sacred and profane) violated without forraine Hostilitie : in so much that diuers Citizens chose rather to make resistance, and tooke heart to defend their Temples, yea to sacrifice their liues before the Altars of the Gods, then to suruiue the Desolation and Confusion of their Countrey. Hence it came, that whole Cities and Countries began now to execrate him : the Souldiers also themselves disgusted him ; considering how their Friends and Kinsfolkes still vpbrayded them, that for their sakes *Maximine* committed those enormities.

These were strong prouocatiues to excite People to hate him and rebell against him. But as yet they fell to their Prayers onely imploring the Gods which he had so highly dishonored, to reuenge it: none daring

The deuotion
of the Romans.

daring to vndertake the vindication of the State, till after three years of his reigne vpon a very small Occasion (as the estate of Tyrants is very tickle) the Africans first

Africke reuolts
from *Maxi-*
mine.

tooke Armes against him, for this Cause : There was at Carthage a certaine Procurator, of extreme saluage and cruell conditions : who by raking money out of others ruines, was become the Emperors Favorite : For *Maximine* was onely friend to those that were for his ends : so that all the Officers of his Exchequer were either dis-officed, if they were honest men (as very few of them were) or else being afraid of him, whose Auarice they well knew, they did as the rest, though much against their wills. Wherefore the African Procurator aforesaid, among other his Exactions and Oppressions, had a plot to get money of certaine Noble and wealthy young Gentlemen, that by meanes of promoting Knaues were circumuented and condemned to lose all their Goods and Lands of Inheritance. At which sentence the Gentlemen being extremely

grieved,

Griued, promised to giue a great summe for their Redemption within three dayes after : Meane while they conspired together, and appointed a meeting of all those that had beene damnified by the Procurator, or were in danger of him : Whereupon, there assembled a great number of Country fellowes, with Clubs and Bills, which (by night) entred the City, hiding (as well as they could) the weapons they had suddenly got. When they were come together, they made a mighty Troope : (for Afrike being exceeding populous had at that time many Hiends and Husbandmen.) As soone as it was day, the Gentlemen commanded them to follow them as farre off, (as if they were part of the People) and not to shew their weapons, or offer any violence, till they perceiued some of the Souldiers, or others, to assault them in reuenge of that Fact which they then intended to execute. Thus the yong Gallants, hiding their Poniards in their bosomes, went to the Procurator, pretending to pay him the Money which
they

they promised : and instantly slew him. The Souldiers which waited on him, drawing their swords to reuenge his death, suddenly the Country Clownes came in with their Clubs and Glaiues, and laid so about them, that they put them to flight. Which done, the Gentlemen being now desperate, and supposing that the onely way to saue themselves, was to attempt some higher Designe, resolute to associate the Gouvernour of the Prouince, and to embarke him in the Action ; as also to sollicite the Commons to Rebellion, w^{ch} they wel knew was long since wished, but deferred for feare of *Maximine*. Accompanied therefore with all the Multitude, they march at Noon-day to the Gouvernours house, whose name was *Gondian* : He was made Proconsull at the Age of 80; hauing beene Ruler of many other Prouinces, and a man well practised in State affaires : wherefore they supposed he would the sooner bee induced to accept the Empire (as a Crowne to his other preferments) and that the Romane Peeres

and People would like well of him, that being nobly descended, did by the Steps of so many severall Offices and Honours ascend the Imperiall Throne. Now it happened, that the same day these things were agitated, *Gordian* was at his owne house, where he reposed himselfe, having put off (for the present) all manner of business. The Gentlemen with their drawne swords, and a great Troope following them, thrust aside the Porters, and entring the house, find him resting on his Couch: where compassing the old man, they vest him in Purple, and giue him the Title and Honour of Emperour. He amazed at that unexpected accident, and fearing it was some plot to take away his life, casts himselfe from his Pallet on the floore, and beseeches them (on his knees) to spare a poore old man that had done them no wrong, and to shew themselves good subjects to the Emperour. But they being very importunate, and having their naked swords in their hands, while *Gordian* was in a fearfull maze, not knowing

his

and

what

what they meant, nor what was the Cause of that sudden Tumult, one of the Gentlemen that for his birth and parts, was the chiefe among them, commanding the rest to keepe silence, and holding his sword in his hand; spake in this manner:

A speech to Gordian.

Sir; you must instantly take your choice of two dangers, whereof the one is present and apparant, the other is onely in futurity and contingent: that is, either to save your selfe and us, by embracing this hopefull opportunity; or to bee forthwith cut in peeces without any helpe or remedy. If you make Election of the first and better offer, there are many encouragements: for by that meanes you shall take away that most odious and hideous Tyrant Maximine, crowne

Ggg 2

all

*all your former Noble Acts, and
reape immortall thanks and honour
from the Romane Senate and people.
But if you refuse to ioyne with vs,
we will instantly kill you, and sacrifice
our selues (if need be) in this quar-
rell. For wee haue done that which
we are sure will neuer bee pardoned
with our safety. The Procurator and
Instrument of Villany hath receiued
his reward, being slaine by our hands
(for his Barbarous sharking cruelty.
Wherefore if you will giue your con-
sent and partake of our perills, you
shall attaine the Imperiall dignity,
and Wee in stead of punishment shall
purchase immortall Glory.*

*While the Gentleman thus spake, the
rest of the Multitude impatient of delay,
(especially now that al the City was come
thither vpon the newes) proclaime Gor-
dian.*

*Gordian Em-
perour.*

*dian Emperour. Hee though hee were
somewhat coy, and pretended he was too
aged, yet being naturally desirous of
honour, accepted their offer with a little
reluctation: choosing rather to auoid the
present then future perill: and holding
it not inglorious for him to dye in his last
Age (if need were) in Imperiall Robes.
Hereupon all Africa was in rebellion, and
many Cities pulling downe Maximines I-
mages, erected Gordians Statues; whom
they surnamed Africane: (for so the Sou-
therne Lybians are called by the Romans.
Gordian hauing stayed certaine dayes at
the City of Thystrum (where this hap-
ned) tooke vpon him the Stile and Habit
Imperiall, and remoued to Carthage,
which being a very great and famous Ci-
ty, might well (for the present) bee the
seat of the Emperour: it being so rich, po-
pulous, and large, that it is reputed next
to Rome, and contends wyth Alexandria
of Egypt for precedence. He was royally
attended by all the Nobles, Gallants, and
Soldiers thereabouts, and by all the youth*
G g g 3 of

of the City ; which were of very tall stature, like them of the Emperours Guard at Rome: Rods of Laurels were also born before him, (as distinctiue ornaments of Princes from priuate persons) and Fire likewise (after the vsuall manner.) Thus Carthage, for a while, represented Rome. Gordian sent many Letters to the chiefe Romane Citizens and Senators, whereof the most part were his entire Friends. He writ also a publique Letter to the Peeres and People of Rome: signifying the vni-forme consent of Africa in his election, and accusing *Maximines* Cruelty, which (he knew) was abhorred of all men.

Himselfe exprest all Mildnesse and Clemency. For he banisht all Informers, and suffered those that were vniustly condemned, to reuerse the iudgement by pleading. He recall'd all Exiles; and promised to giue the Souldiers more then euer Emperour did, and to reward the Commons with an extraordinary largesse of Corne. He also gaue order to kill *Vitalian*, the Prætorian Præfect at Rome, a bloody Monster,

Vitalian.

ster, but in great esteeme with *Maximine*. For doubting, lest he, opposing his Designs, should terrifie others from taking part with him; hee addressees to him the Treasurer of the Prouince, a daring yong fellow, and of great valour, being now in the prime of his youth, one that would vndergoe any hazard for his seruice: appointing also diuers Centurions and Souldiers to accompany him. Having giuen him Letters sealed with two scales, in such sort as the Emperours vse, when they write their secret affaires; he commanded them to enter the City before day, and while *Vitalian* was busie in his Closet where hee vsed to keepe all the priuy passages of the Empire, to repaire to him and tell him hee had secret Letters to deliuer him from *Maximine*; and was also to conferre with him in priuate about some things concerning the Emperours safety, by his expresse command: and then, as he was busie in viewing the scales, to stab him with their poniards, which they should carry in their bosomes. All which hap-

happened as he desired. For before it was Day, about the time that hee vsed to bee stirring, they found him almost all alone, hauing very few about him, for some were not yet come to salute him, others hauing saluted him were departed. Being therefore at good leasure, they were soone let in to him; and hauing deliuered the Letters, while hee curiously viewed the Seales, they stabd him; and leaping forth with their naked Daggers in their hands, easily escaped: those few which stood before the doore, giuing way; supposing that *Maximine* had sent them on that Errand, (for he had oft sent such tokens to his dearest friends :) Then going into the midst of ** Via sacra*, they published *Gordians* Letter to the People; and deliuer likewise his *Missiues* directed to the Consulls and others: strongly giuing out, that *Maximine* was slaine. At which Newes all the people ranne to and fro as men distracted. For the Vulgar are euer prone to innouation, but especially the people of Rome, (consisting of

** The high street*

so many sundry Nations) are most fickle and wauering. Straight therefore (vpon these Aires) were all the Honors, Images, and Statues of *Maximine* defaced. Hatred (which till then was ouer-awed by feare) powring out it selfe (without any stop) through the Flood-gates of Licentiousnesse. The Sonate also being assembled, though they had no full certainty concerning *Maximine*, yet coniecturing by the present Current, that it was so; decreed that all his Honours should bee abolisht: and declared *Gordian* and his Sonne Emperours. Whereupon Informers and common Accusers either fled or were slaine by them whom they had wronged. The Procurators also and Iudges which had beene his Agents and Instruments of Tyranny, were trailed through the streets by the people, and cast into the common lakes. Many also that were innocent, perisht in this Tumult: for, Debtors killed their Creditors, and they that had suits in Law, or bore the least grudge against others, broke into their Aduersaries houses,

H h h rifled

stiffed their Goods, and slew them. Thus vnder colour of Liberty, the acts of Ciuill Warre were executed in time of Peace: and when *Sabinus* Prouost of the City (a Consular Nobleman) went about to re- presse these Insolencies, they pasht out his Braines with Clubs. Thus the Multitude raged. But when the Senate at last vnderstood in what Danger they were, (*Maximine* being aliue) they incessantly laboured all the Prouinces to reuolt, sending the chiefeft Nobles and Knights as Embassadors to the Vice-gerents, with Letters from the Senate and People of Rome; exhorting them to haue a care of their common Country and the Romane Empire; and to perswade the Prouinces to continue in their obedience to the Romanes, to whom the Empire belonged as their ancient Right, and with whom their Ancestors had euer beene in League and Amity. The Embassadors were welcome to most places, and the people fell a pace to Mutiny, in detestation of *Maximines* Tyranny. And now all his catching and

Sabinus.

and poling Officers were slaine euery where: and whole Prouinces reuolted from him to the Romanes; yet some few there were that either slew the Embassadors, or sent them (with a strong Conuoy) to *Maximine*, who put them to exquisite torments.

When *Maximine* first receiued aduertisement of the Romanes Resolution, though he were throughly nettled at the newes, yet not seeming to regard it, hee kept within, the two next daies; and aduised with his Councell: and although the businesse were well knowne to all the Army and Countrey*, who were transported with wonder at so strange and bold Attempts; yet euery one held his peace, and pretended hee knew nothing: for *Maximine* had his Spies and Emisseries euery where, that obserued not onely the words and speeches of men, but their * nods also & countenances, which made all men to stand in infinite dread and awe of him. The third day *Maximine* assembling his Army in a Plaine before the

* Pannonia.

Maximines
Spies.

* *νῶματα*.

* Sirmium.

* City, takes his seat and reads to them out of a booke a speech penned by some of his Counsell, to this effect:

Maximines speech to the Army.

I Shall relate to you very strange newes, yet (in my Iudgement) not so strange as ridiculous. There are Warres raised against you; not by the Germanes you haue so oft vanquisht, nor by the Sarmatians, which daily sollicite vs for Peace: nor by the Persians, who once ranged ouer Mesopotamia, but are now glad to keepe home, being ouer-awed by your braue deeds of Armes, and my owne Exploits, well knowne to them when I was Generall of the Army for the Marches: but (which is most ridiculous) by the Carthaginians: who are

are so mad as to perswade or enforce (I know not whether) an old dotting Cripple, to act a King in a Play. For what Armie haue they to backe them? Proconsuls, Bedles *. What Weapons? small hunting stauces. What warlike Discipline? Dances, Quips, and Figges. Nor let it trouble you to heare the newes of Rome, that Vitalian is traiterously slaine *. You well know what Weather-cockes the Roman people are: and how great their Tongue valour is: but if they espie but two or three men of Warre, they will crowd and crush one another, and euery one shift for himselfe, not respecting the Publicke. As for the Decrees of the Senate, (if you haue heard of them) no maruell if my Continency displease them, and that they

* παρρηγοι.

* μέγας βοής
σπασθ.

they can better away with his dissolute life which is so suteable to their Dispositions. Hence is it, that they repute valiant and hardy Acts for Cruelty : and debauched deedes for Mildnesse and Clemency. And hence it commeth, that our Gouvernement which is so graue and regular, seems harsh to them ; and Gordian that puff-paste Titulado is so well accepted ; who what a Brand of Infamy he carries, is not unknowne to you. Against these and such as these, we are to make Warre, if it may desaxue the name of Warre. For I am confident that assoone as we arrive at Italie, the greatest part of them (if not all) will come forth to meet vs with Olive branches in their hands, and their yong children in their armes, and fall
downe

downe at our feet ; or else betake themselves to flight, and leane their Goods and Estates for mee to bestow vpon you, who may securely enioy them.

Hauiug thus said, and now and then thundred out many execrable words against the Citie and Senate, with Tragick action, sterne lookes, and frowning countenance (as if they had beene present) he proclaimes his Expedition for Italy : and giuing to euery Souldier large Pay, the second day following he sets forward with a huge Army of the Romane Forces. There were also with him diuers Regiments of Germanes which hee had either subdued by Armes, or made his Allies and Confederates. Hee tooke with him store of Engines and warlike Instruments, and whatsoeuer hee had prepared against the Barbarians.

He marched slowly, by reason of the Cariages, and other Necessaries which
were

Maximines Expedition to Italy.

were taken vp by the way. For his Iourney into Italy being sudden, all the prouision could not bee in such readinesse (as formerly he vsed to haue it) but they were forced to take it vp (in that hast) where they could get it. He sent before, the Pannonian Legions, on whom he most relied; for they first saluted him Emperour, and desired they might haue the honour to hazard their liues for his safety. These he commanded to march before, and seize vpon Italy. While *Maximine* was on his Iourney, his Affaires prospered at Carthage, vunexpectedly. *Capellianus*, a Noble Senator, being Procurator of Mauritania, (subiect to the Romanes, and by them called Numidia) had the command of a strong Army for defence of the Prouince against the prædatory Irruptions of the Moorish Barbarians. This *Capellianus* and *Gordian* had not beene friends (of a long time) by reason of a Suit in Law which they had. *Gordian* therefore as soon as he had the Title of Emperour, sent one to take his Place, and commanded him

to

Numidia the
most Southerly
Prouince of
the Roman
Empire.

to depart the Prouince. *Capellian* taking this in great scorne, and being true to *Maximine*, (by whose grace he was preferred to that Honour) gathers all his Forces together, and hauing perswaded them to keepe their Faith and Oath to the Emperour, marches to Carthage; leading a mighty Army of gallant young men, well arm'd and disciplin'd, and hardned to the Warres by their continuall conflicts with the Barbarians. When *Gordian* heard that *Capellian* approached the City, he was pitiously affrighted, and all Carthage terrified: yet the Citizens ran forth to encounter the Enemy, hoping to get the Victory with a Crew of tumultuary Troops, that were rather a confused Masse of men, then a well ordered Army. As soone as *Capellian* was come to Carthage, old *Gordian* seeing *Maximine* so strong, and that he had no Forces in Africke to counterballance him; grew desperate (as they say) and hanged himselfe. But the Citizens concealing his Death, chose his sonne for their Chiefe, and so they ioyned battell.

Capellian marches
against
Carthage.

Gordians sonne
elected.

The Carthagenians were the greater number, but they were vntrained, and had neuer seene the Warres; for they liu'd in Peace, and gaue themselues to feasting and Pastimes, and were not prouided of Armes or any Militarie Ammunition. Euery man therefore brought with him his Dagger, or Axe, or hunting staffe, and some armed themselues with Clubs and sharpe stakes. On the other side, the Numidians were expert Darters, and excellent horsemen, guiding their horses without bridles (euen as they pleased) with a Switch. The Carthagenians therefore were soone routed: for not being able to match them, they all threw away their weapons, and fled amaine, trampling and treading on one another in such sort, that more perisht by themselues, then by the Enemy. Gordians son was also slaine with all his followers. So great was the number that fell, that the principall persons could not bee found to receiue fune-
rall honour, nor the dead Body of the yong Prince Gordian. For of so many
which

which fled, but a few returned into the City; which escaped by hiding themselues, the rest crowding to the Gates, and struiuing to enter one before another, were all slaughtered by the Darters, and the other Souldiers: the women and children making a grieuous outcry to see their deare parents and husbands slaine before their eyes. Some say that when Gordian (who by reason of his age stayed at home) was told that Capellianus was come into the City, he went into his bed-
chamber (as it were to his rest) and de-
spairing of helpe strangled himselfe with his girdle; This was Gordians end, who
hauing long flourisht in great Honor dy-
ed an Imaginary Emperor.

Old Gordian
hangs himselfe.

Capellian hauing taken Carthage, put to death all the chiefe of them that elcaped out of the battel, and robbed all the Temples and Treasures. Then marching to the rest of the Cities that had defaced Maximines Honors, he slew the better sort and banisht the rest: putting the Souldiers to burne and pillage the Fields and

Townes, pretending to punish them in *Maximines* quarrell: howbeit, he secretly allured the Souldiers to his party, that if *Maximine* chanced to miscary, hee might by their fauour rise to the Empire. This was the state of *Africa*: but when News came to *Rome* that *Gordian* was dead, all the Senate was mightily * dampt and dismayed, hauing lost him, in whom they reposed all their hopes. For they well knew, that *Maximine* would now spare none of them, seeing he neuer loued them, and had then so iust and grounded Causes to hate them. . Wherefore they had many Meetings and Consultations in that Exigent, and resoluing, since they had run so great a hazard, to prepare for War, they elected two Emperours to rule the State with equall Authority, lest they should againe bee ouer-borne by Tyranny. They assembled not (as they were wont) in the Parliament-house, but in the Temple of *Iupiter Capitolinus* (which the *Romes* haue in chiefe Veneration) where the doores being lockt, they proceeded (in that

ἐν πολλῇ τα-
ραχῇ καὶ
ἀφαισῇ.

The Temple
of Ioue.

that sacred Consistory) as in Presence of the All-seeing * Deity (their Witnesse and Assistant) to chose out of all the Company, the most worthy Persons for Grauity and Honor: Whereupon *Maximus* and *Albinus* were by most Voices elected Emperours. *Maximus* hauing beene oft Generall of the Army, and then Prouost of the City, had so honorably demeaned himselfe, that hee got great Reputation for his Wisedome, Prouidence, and Continence: *Albinus* being nobly descended, was twice Consul, and had gouerned many Prouinces * vnblameably; and of the two, was more mild and temperate. Thus were they saluted Emperours, and called *Augusti*, and by the Senates Decree adorned with all Imperiall Honours. While these things were acted in the Capitoll, the Commons of the City either suborned by *Gordians* friends, or stirred vp by the Report of what was done, thronged to the Gates, and filled all the street which led to the Capitoll, with Multitudes, and being armed with stones and

* Επιστάτης ὅς
ἐστὶν ὁμοίων.

Maximus and
Albinus Em-
perours.

* ἀνέκλιτος.

Reiected by
the Commons.

staues they decry'd the Election. but especially they reiected *Maximus* as a man of too great Austerity, and being extreemly offended with him, cried out that they would presently kill them both, and that they wold haue a Prince of *Gordians* lineage, that the Empire might continue in that name and Line. *Albinus* and *Maximus* being guarded with the young Gallants and City-Souldiers, assayed to goe forth of the Capitoll, but they were kept in with Clubs and Stones, till by this inuention (of I know not whom) the people were deluded.

The Commons
deluded,

There was in the City a little Boy, son to *Gordians* daughter, and of his grandfathers name; him they sent for thither. They which were sent for him, finding him playing at home, lifted him on their shoulders, and so caried him through the crowd, shewing him to the people, and telling them hee was *Gordians* Nephew, and of his name, all along as they went, till they came to the Capitoll: the people shouting for ioy and casting greene leaues vpon

vpon him. When the Senate had proclaimed him *Cæsar* (his minority not permitting him to mannage the State) and the people were now calmed, the Emperors elect were suffred to passe to the Palace. Not long after, there hapned a bloody broile in the City by the rashnesse of two Senators: For the Senate being assembled about the publike Affaires, certaine ancient Souldiers that had heretofore followed *Maximine*, and now kept home by reason of their age, came to the Doore of the Senate-house to hearken what was done there, but without their Armes, in thinn Garments and Cassocks. They stood without among the rest of the people; but while some of them waited at the doore, two or three being more desirous to heare the Consultation then the rest, pressed into the senate-house beyond the Altar of Victorie. Whereupon *Gallicanus* a Senator that had lately beene Consul, (a Carthagenian borne) and *Mecenas* a Prætor suddenly stabd the souldiers to the heart, ere they wist of it, hauing their

Gordian Cæsar.

Souldiers slaine.

their hands (yet) vnder their Cassockes. For all the Senators by reason of the last Tumult and Insurrection, either secretly or openly wore swords or skeines for their owne * defence. The souldiers thus slaine before they could make any Defence, lay dead before the Altars; whereupon the other souldiers being frightened with their Fellowes murther, and fearing lest the people would fall on them likewise, (being vnarmed) they betooke themselves to Flight. *Gallicanus* rushing out of the Senate into the midst of the Multitude, and holding vp his Hand and Sword all gored with blood, exhorted them to pursue and put to the sword all *Maximines* Fautors and Adherents, as Traitors to the Senate and City. The people easily induced, applaud *Gallicanus*, and following the soldiers as far as they could; pelted them with stones. They, outrunning them to the Campe, as being but a few, and some of them wounded, shut the Gates, and taking Armes, prepared to defend the Walls. *Gallicanus* hauing done this

* Ordinarily they might not bring weapons into the Senate.

this bold Deed, kindled a ciuill VVarre which proued most pernicious to the Citie: For hee instigated the Commons to breake open the publike Armonies, (wherein Instruments rather for show then VVarre were kept) that euery man might get some kind of Armour. Then he went to the * Fencers * Hostelryes, and caused euery one of them to arme themselves with their owne VVeapons. Lastly all Speares, swords, Axes and whatsoever was found in shops or houses that might serue to fight with, the Commoners laid hold of, in their fury; and hurried all vpon a head to assault the Campe (as if it had beene a Citie) beleagring the VValles and Gates. But the Souldiers being well practised in feats of Armes, defended themselves with their Targets and Pinnacles, and droue backe the Multitude with their Arrowes and long Lances.

The people being wearied, and the Sword-players wounded, began to retreat because it grew late in the euening: The Souldiers seeing them giue back, and perceiving

A Commotion at Rome.

* καταγογγια. * They were such as killed one another on the Stage, to make the people sport. vid. Salsianum. lib. 6s

seeing how securely they struggled, (for they thought so few durst not come out against so many) suddenly opened their gates, and running vpon that confused Company, slew all the Gladiators, and a great number of the Commoners: which done, they returned to the Campe. This enraged the Romane Senate and People: wherefore they called a Councell of War of all the best Captaines of Italy, and mustering the most able young men, they armed them (on the sudden) as well as they could: the greatest part of them, *Maximus* led against *Maximine*; the rest were left for defence of the City. And now did they daily besiege the Campe, but to small purpose: for the Souldiers (from above) did fight grimly, and wounding the Multitude, gaue them a shrewd Repulse. *Albinus* keeping home, published an Edict, wherein he desired that there might be a Reconcilement betweene the Commons and Souldiers; to whom hee likewise promised a Generall Pardon for all that was past. But neither party would be

Fencers slain.

A Councell of War.

A generall Pardon.

he perswaded, (the Mischiefe still growing worse and worse:) for the People scorned that so small a company should so out-braue them, and the Souldiers stormed to see Romanes band against them like Barbarians. In conclusion, when the siege tooke little effect, the Captaines of the Commons determined to cut off all the Brookes that ran into the Campe, that the Souldiers might perish for lacke of Water, and be starued with Thirst. Wherefore by choaking the Springs, and diuerting the Streames, they tooke away all Reliefe from the Campe. Then the Souldiers in a desperate rage, rusht all out, and giuing the Citizens a Camisado, routed them, and pursued them into the Citie. The People not able to match them hand to hand, retired into their houses, and threw at them (from above) Tiles, Stones, and Shels. The Souldiers not daring to enter the Houses, which they were vnacquainted with, (for all Houses and shops were shut vp) fired the Gates and wooden Porches (whereof there were many

A Stratagem.

*ordered

The Prætorians fire Rome.

in

in the City: & whereupon, the Streets be-
ing close together, and the Buildings most
of wood, the greatest part of the City was
burnt, and many rich men yndone, that
had all their most precious Mouebles
and chiefe Substance consumed. Many
were burned in their Houses that could
not get out through the doores, (which
were all on a flame) and all the Wealth of
the prime Citizens was utterly pillaged;
the poorest and lewdest of the People as-
sociating themselves with the Souldiers,
to make spoile of all. Meane while, the
Fire raged so farre and wide, that it con-
sumed more buildings then would haue
made a very great City.

While matters passe thus at Rome, Ma-
ximine being armed at the Frontiers of Ita-
ly, offered Sacrifice on the Altars there e-
rected; and then marched with his Army
embattled. Having thus described the re-
uolt of Africk, the Ciuill War at Rome, &
Maximines Exploits and Expedition hi-
therto, we will declare the rest in the se-
quel.

The end of the seuenth Booke.



HERODIAN

His

IMPERIAL L

HISTORY.

THE EIGHTH BOOKE.

The Contents.

SConts. Maximines Army, bow
marshalled. Ema. Alpes de-
scribed. Aquileia described. Cris-
pinus and Moniphilus. Maxi-
mines Message to the Aquileians.
Crispinus his Speech to the Aqi-
leians. The god Bel. Aquileia as-
saulted and brauely defended. The
Romanes Policy. Maximine slaine.

KKK3

A Jubilee at Rome, for his Death. A triumphant Embassie. Maximus and Albinus. Dissention. They are stript, beaten, and murdered by the Prætorian Souldiers. Gordian Cæsar Emperour.



WE have formerly related the Acts of *Maximine* after *Gordian's* death, his access to Italy, the Defection of Africk, and the Division of the Roman Souldiers and Citizens. *Maximine* being come to the borders of Italy, sent forth Scouts to discover if there were any Ambuscadoes in the Bottomes and thick Forests of the Alpes; and then leading his Men into the Plaine, arranged his Legions in a Quadrangular forme, extending more in length then depth; that taking vp the greater roome, the Baggage, Beasts, and Waggon might be placed in the midst; In the Reere, himselfe and his Guard followed: the Wings con-

Scouts.

Maximines
Army.

consisted of Horsemen in complete Armour, Moresco Darters, and Easterne Archers. He had many Auxiliary Regiments of Germane Horse, which he still vsed to put in Front, to receiue the first * Shock of the Enemy; both because they were very grim & fierce at the first brunt; and to the end, that if any Danger were, those Barbarians might (as forlorne hopes) be chiefly engaged.

Having marcht in Battalia ouer all the Plaine, they came to a City of Italy called *Emma*; situate in the furthest part of the Plaine, neere to the foot of the Alpes. Here the Scouts and Van-currers brought word to *Maximine*, that the City had not one man left in it, and that all the people were fled, having burnt the gates of their Temples and Houses, and caried or made away all they had in the City and Territorie: leauing no sustenance or prouision for Man or Beast. *Maximine* was glad that the Italians fled so soone, as hoping that all would make way for him, and not abide his comming: But the Army was fore

* res. res. res.
euGard.

Emma

fore grieved that they were so suddenly pincht with Famine.

Having passed the night, partly in the open and empty houses, partly on the Plaine, they marched (at Sunne-rising) to the Alpes. These exceeding long Mountaines Nature hath made as a Wall to Italy, of such height, that they seeme to bee above the Clouds, and of so large Extenture, that they reach ouer all Italy; stretching on the left hand to the Tyrrhene Sea; on the right, to the * Ionian Bay, ouer-growne euery where, with thick Woods, being scarce passable by reason of the narrow Pathes, craggy Rockes and steepe Precipices: yet some trackes there are made by the great labour and handyworke of the Italians of old time. Here the Army was terribly afraid lest the Enemy being lodged on the top, would hinder their Passage and blocke vp the VVay; and they had iust cause to doubt it, considering the Nature of the Place. But after, when they had past the Alpes without stop or rub, they all encamped with

Alpes described.

* viz. To the utmost part of the Adriaticke Sea, (now the Gulfe of Venice.) Vid. Strabo lib. 7.

with great Alacrity, and sung * Paeans for Joy. And now *Maximine* assured himselfe of good successe, when hee saw the Italians durst not take the benefit of those rough and aduantageous Places, where they might by Ambuscadoes haue fore-layed and entrapped their Enemies; and fighting from the heights, haue much endamaged them. Being come to the Plaine, the Scouts bring word, that * *Aquileia* the greatest City of Italy had shut her Gates; and that the Pannonian Legions which were sent before, had fiercely assaulted the Wall: but in vaine, being still beaten backe with stones, speares and continuall shot of Arrowes: and now being wearied, had giuen it ouer. But *Maximine* storming at the Pannonians for not fighting hard enough, hastens thither with the Army, not doubting but easily to master the City. But *Aquileia* being a mighty large City was euer very populous; and being as it were the Mart-Towne of Italy (by adioyning to the Sea) and the Bondure of the Illyrian Provinces,

* Hymnes of Victory sung to loud Musicks.

* New Algar.

Aquileia described.

original
of the
original
of the
original

goods, it sent forth great store of Merchandise and provision (brought from the Continent by land and water) by means of their shipping; and received by Sea all necessaries for the use of them that dwelt in the Continent, (the High-land countries by reason of the sharp Winters being not so fertile:) But their chiefe Merchandise and Staple-commodity, is VVines; with which (having great store) they furnish abundantly all the adioyning Regions; so that the City (beside her owne great numbers) was full of strangers and Merchants that trafficked thither. But at that time it was also replenished with a world of Country people, that leaving the Dorpes and Villages round about, fled thither for safety, because it was a great walled City. For though the old walls were for the most part suffered to fall to Ruine, in regard the Cities of Italy having since the VVars so long flourished in peace, being (after the Establishment of the Empire) one Body Politique with the Romans, needed neither walls nor

Armes to defend them) yet now Necessity enforced to rebuild the Wall and repair the Ruines, and to raise Towers and Bulwarks: so that all the City being quickly fortified, and the Gates battaced, the people night and day guarded the Walls and bravely repulst the Enemy. Their chiefe Commanders and Gouvernours were two Consular Noble-men elected by the Senate, *Crispinus* and *Meniphus*, who with singular Providence had caused all manner of provision to be imported into the City, that it might endure a long siege. They had Abundance of VVater both of Springs and Pits in great number, and from the Riuer running vnder the VValls, which defended them as a deepe Ditch, and furnished the Towne with VVater. Thus was the City furnished. VVhen *Maximine* heard how gallantly they defended the VValls and guarded the Gates, hee resolved to send Commissioners to the to perswade them (if it were possible) to open the Gates to him. Hee had in his Army a

Crispinus and Meniphus.

* Thence called *Aquileia*.

Maximus.

Maximines
message to the
Aquileians.

Captaine, that was borne in Aquileia, whose Wife, Children, and Family were shut vp in the City. Him hee sends with other Captaines, hoping the Burgers would giue credence to him being their Townesman. These Commissioners coming to the wall, spake to this Effect;

Y Our Liege Lord and Emperour Maximine wills you to lay down your Armes like men of Peace, and receiue him not as an Enemy, but as a Friend, that desires to feast, & sacrifice with you, and not to destroy you:

Commiserate your Native Country, which (if you resist) will be utterly ruined: Now (if you will) you may saue your selues, and preserue your Country: The good Emperour will forgive and forget all that is past, seeing what you did, was not by your own default but by Instigation of others.

Thus

Thus the Commissioners standing vnder the Wall, spake with a lowd voice, which all might easily heare, especially they that stood on the Walls and Towers: for all listened attentiuely to heare what they said. Crispinus fearing lest the Multitude should bee moued with their Promises, to change War for Peace, and set open the Gates to the Enemy; rantherd and fro vpon the Walls, Admiring and beseeching them to bee couragious, and stand out brauely, and not betray their Allegiance to the Romane Senate and People, or lose the Honor of being the Deliuerers and Defenders of Italie: telling them, that no credit was to be given to the Allurements of a perjured and deceitfull Tyrant, that panted after their Destruction, and sought to betray them with gay words: that it were swart better trust to the Fortune of Warre, seeing it fell out many times, that greater Numbers were vanquisht by a few, and the stronger in shew, by them that were thought the weaker: that they should not bee dismayed at the Multitude of the Army: for they which fought in anothers Quarrell, would be more re-

Crispinus speech
to the Aquilei-
ans.

misse and unspirited in Fight, as knowing that they should partake in the Danger, but not in the Victory, since another would reap the greatest and fairest fruits thereof, and arrogate the Honour to himselfe: whereas they that tooke Armes for their Countrey, might conceive better hopes that the Gods would prosper them, in that they fought not to take from others, but to keepe their owne: and that they ought also to be bravely resolute since they fought not at the Command of another, but for their owne necessary Defence, and therefore all the benefit of the Victory would wholly redound to themselves.

Crispinus having thus spoke to every one in particular, and to the People in general, (being also of a Reverend Aspect, an eloquent Orator, and welbelov'd for his milde Governement) perswaded the Burgers to continue in Obedience, and sent away the Commissioners without Dispatch. It is said they stood out the more confidently being animated by the Answers of the 8. Augurs, which told them that the omens of the Sacrifices promised good success. For the Italians do much

much credit to such Passages. Divers Blacks also were reported to be delighted by their Patriall God, assuring them of Victory. They call him Bel, and adore him with great Devotion, for as those eye-witnessers of Maximian's souldiers said that they oft saw him in the sky fighting for the City. But whether he truly appeared to them, or they cunningly feigned it, to raise the credit of so great an Army, repulse by Townsmen fewer in number then themselves (that they might seeme rather to be aided by Gods then Men) I cannot determine. But the strangeness of an Event makes all things more credible. The Commissioners being returned to Maximine without success, he was vnder drous wrath, and made the more haste. Being come to a great River, fiftene miles distant from Aquileia, hee found it exceeding deepe and broad. For the snow which had continued all the Winter on the next Mountains, being now dissolved by the season of the year, made an exceeding great Flood: so that the Army could

* Emxael.
The God Bel.
Vid. Selden. de
Dis Syria Syn.
pag. 1. 6. 6.

could have no passage. For the Aquileians had thrown down a large and goodly Bridge of Free-stone, which was anciently made ouer it by the Emperours. No Bridge nor Bark being to be found, the Army knew not what to doe. Certaine Germanes not knowing the strong and swift Current of the Riuers of Italy, supposing they glided as gently as their owne Country Riuers which by reason of their slower motion are the sooner frozen, aduentured to take the water with their Horses which could swim well, but perished by the Violence of the Stream.

Maximine hauing kept his Pauilion two or three daies, and commanded the Army to entertaine themselves (for feare of a surprize) stood on the Banke deuising how to make a Bridge ouer the Riuer. But wanting both Timber and bargen to offe to it, hee was told by some of the *Engineers*, that there were in the deserted Villages many Hogsheads and empty Casks (formerly vsed by the Inhabitants for Wine Vessels) which being blued round

round and hollow (like Brigandines) and fastned together, would float like Shallops; and being fast bound and couered with Bauins, and good store of Earth cast vpon them, would bee firme enough. Thus, *Maximine* himselfe overseeing the Worke, the Army passed ouer, and drew neere to the City: where finding the Suburbs empty, they cut down and burnt all the Vineyards and Orchards, and quite disfigured the Beauty of the Territory. For the Trees planted in curious Rankes, and the Vines daintily inter-set & contriued one within another, made a Gallant Shevy, and seemed (as it were) to Crowne all the Countrey. But the rude souldiers rooted all vp, & made their Approches to the VVall. Being tired and harassed, he set them not presently vpon the Assault. Encamping therefore out of danger of the Bowmen, hee marshalled his Army into seuerall Squadrons and Battalions, assigning to euery one a distant Battery. After one daies Rest, they began the Assault. Then brought they out all kinde of

M m m

En-

Engines, and furiously battering the
 Walles, left no manner of Assault unat-
 tempted. The Siege continuing thus al-
 most euery day, with great Violence, (for
 the whole Army beset the Towne, and
 made their Scaladaes on euery side,) the
 Aquileians made a braue Resistance. For
 hauing lockt vp their Temples and Hou-
 ses, all the Men, VVomen and Children
 fought aloft from the Turrets and Battle-
 ments. For there was none so tender,
 weake or infirme, but fought for their
 Countrey. And now the Suburbs, and
 whatsoeuer buildings without the Gates,
 were all pulled downe by *Maximines* Ar-
 my, and the Timber worke made into
 Engines. For they forcibly attempted to
 demolish some part of the VVall, that the
 Souldiers entering, might spoile all, and vt-
 terly raze the City from the Foundation,
 and make the Countrey about it a waste
 VVildernesse. For hee thought it a great
 Indecorum and Dishonour to take his
 Iburney to Rome, hauing not razed the
 first City of Italy that withstood him.

Aquileia af-
 faulted, and
 brauely defen-
 ded.

m m m

VVhere

Wherefore the Emperour himselfe and his
 sonne (whom he had made Cæsar) rode among the Souldiers, encouraging them
 with great promises of Reward, and en-
 treating them with earnest Perswasions
 to fight manfully. But the Aquileians
 pelted them with stones from aboue, and
 when they came close to the walles, they
 poured on them (out of vessels with long
 Handels) streames of burning Pitch and
 Brimstone, and the like Bituminous stuffe,
 which lighting on the naked parts of their
 bodies ranne all ouer them, so that they
 were forced to pul off their Coats of Male
 which were fired, and likewise their o-
 ther Armour which was glowing hot:
 as for the Leather and wood it was all
 burnt and riuell'd. Thus might you see
 the Souldiers stripping themselves of their
 Armes which lay like spoiles taken from
 them rather by * Finenesse of wit, than
 Fine Force: insomuch that the greatest
 part of the Army had either their Eyes
 burnt out, or their Faces, Hands, and other
 naked parts of their bodies, pitiously
 scorcht.

*Maximines
 ionac Cæsar*

Ασπιδιται

Σοφία τῆς ψυχῆς

Ἀνδρῶν μὲν

χρῆς

M m m 2

scorcht. They threw also vpon the Engines Fire-brands seared with Pitch and Rosin, and sharpened at the Points like Darts, which being throwne vpon them, stucke fast, and instantly fired them. The first daies, both sides fought with equall Feruor, and the Fortune of the Fight was euently ballanced. But after a while *Maximines* Army began to droope, and bee out of heart, being disappointed of their hope. For they whom they supposed vnable to make head against them, did not onely so, but most brauely repulst them. But the *Aquileians* were more and more animated and full of spirit. For hauing by continuall Conflicts attained both skill and Courage, they scorned the Souldiers, and braued them with Reproaches, and as *Maximine* and his sonne rode about the Walls they saluted them with the Churme of a thousand bitter scoffes and Taunts. Which so enraged him that when hee saw he could not execute his fury on the Enemy, hee bristled like a *WILD-BORIE*, and executed many of his own

Cap-

Captaines and Commanders, pretending they had demeaned themselues basely and cowardly in the Siege; whereby he made himselfe odious to the Army, and ridiculous to the Enemy. Moreouer the *Aquileians* were exceeding well stored with all manner of prouision for Man and beast, which was prouidently imported into the City (before the Siege.) But the *Maximinians* were pinched with extreme want of all things. For hauing destroyed the Fruit-trees, and desolated the Territory; they lay in poore Tents and Cabbins. But most of them lay in the open Ayre, exposed to the Sunne and showers. Nor had they any food for themselues or their Cattell; so that the Famine encreased, in regard no Prouision could be brought to them. For the Romans had euery where blockt vp the wayes of Italy with Walls and Gates. The Senate also sent diuers Consular Noblemen, and the choicest and worthiest Patriots of all Italy, to guard the Coast and Port Townes, and forbid all passage by Water, that *Maximine* might

The Romanes
singular policy.

have no Intelligence of what was done at Rome. There was also strict Watch and Ward in every Through-fare and High-way, and none suffered to passe. Thus the Army which besieged the City was beleagerd it selfe. For they could neither take in Aquileia, nor take their way to Rome for want of Barges and Waggons which were all fore-laied, and intercepted. There were also Rumours (which caried great apparence of Truth) that all the Romane People were in Armes, that all Italy conspir'd with them, that all the Illyrian Prouinces, and Barbarians of the East and South part did raise Forces & band themselues ioyntly against *Maximine* who was generally hated. And now his despairing Souldiers were reduced to such Extreames, as they had scarce water enough. For the Riuer-water (which was all the Drinke they had) was polluted with blood and dead Carcasses; for the Aquileians threw them that died in the City, into the Streame, having nor roome to burie them: and the

Soul-

Souldiers which died by Sword, Sicknes, or Famine, were cast there likewise.

The Army being in this grievous Distresse, it hapned that *Maximine* reposing himselfe in his Pavilion on a Day of Cessatiō of Armes, while the most part of the Army were in their tents, or proper places of Charge, some of the Souldiers which belonged to the Campe neere * Rome, vnder mount Alba, (where their Wives and Children were left) resolved to kill *Maximine*, that so they might be freed frō that tedious and intolerable Leaguer, and from warring vpon Italy, for so odious and barbarous a Tyrant. Wherefore taking courage vnto them, they went about Noone to his Pavilion, (his Guard being also of the Conspiracy) where first rending his Pictures out of the Ensignes, they presently slew him as hee was comming forth to speake to them, together with his sonne, the Generall of his Army, and his dearest Friends: whose carcasses they exposed to scorne, and to bee deuoured by Dogs and Fowles: but sent the heads of

him

* See Aurel.
Victor. de Orig.
Gen. Rom.

Maximine
Aurel.

him and his sonne to Rome. This End had *Maximine* and his sonne, which they well deserued for their wicked Government. When the Army heard of their Murther, they were amazed, for all were not wel pleased with it, especially the Pannonians, and Barbarous Thracians, to whom he was beholding for the Empire. But seeing what was done, could not bee vndone, they digested it (against their stomackes,) and made semblant of reioycing, as others did. And now all the Souldiers laying aside their Armes, went like peaceable men to the Walles of Aquileia, and declaring *Maximines* Death, desired they might be let into the City, as Friends, though before they were Enemies. But the Captaines and Gouvernors of Aquileia would not doe them that fauour, but shewed them the Pictures of *Maximus*, * *Albinus*, and *Gordian Caesar*, adorned with * Crownes and Laurels: which hauing first honored (themselues) with ioyful Acclamations, they wisht the Souldiers likewise to acknowledge them for
 their

* In *Gracis* *Fa-*
stis *Albinus* *di-*
citur
 * *Id. J. Caf.*
Bulleng de Tri-
umph. cap. 17.

their Soueraignes, & to submit themselues with alacritie to their Obedience, whom the Romane Senate & People had elected Emperors: (since the two first *Gordians* were departed to * Heauen & liued with the gods.) Hereupon, they were cōtent to let them haue a Market vpon the Walls, which was furnisht with all necessaries and abundance of Meats and Wines, as also with Apparrell, Shooes, and all things that a happy and flourishing City could haue for the vse of Man: which made the Souldiers to wonder, considering their great plenty and prouision for a longer Siege, and their owne extreame Penurie; for they might sooner haue perisht with Famine, then haue taken a City so well prouided. Thus the Army lodged vnder the Walles, and bought what euery man needed; the Souldiers and Citizens parlying together familiarly: which made a shew both of Peace and Amity, and likewise of Hostility: in regard the Souldiers lay round about the City, which was yet shut against them. While matters pas-

* *us* *uegèr.*

* De Aquileia
vid. Plin Hist.
l. 3. c. 18.

* A Sea-towne
now belonging
to Venice.

* Victoria im-
pulverea.

led thus ^{*} Aquileia, the Horsemen which were sent to carry *Maximus* head to Rome, posted with all speed, and were joyfully received in every Towne and City, the people meeting them with Laurels. After they had past the Lakes and Marishes betwixt ^{*} Alinum and Rauenna, they found *Maximus* the Emperour in Rauenna, mustering the choicest Soldiers of Rome and Italy, (beside the Aides sent him by the Germanes, out of their speciall loue to him who had sometime beene their worthy Gouvernour.) While hee was thus preparing an Host against *Maximine*, suddenly the Knights present him the head of *Maximine* and his Sonne: and bring him the happy newes of Victory and good successe: and that the Army did take part with the Romanes, and honour them (for Emperours) whom the Senate had elected. At this vnexpected newes, all ran to the Altars to sacrifice and giue thanks to the gods for so fortunate a Victory, which hapned without ^{*} striking stroke.

Maximus

Maximus hauing offered sacrifice, sends the Knights to Rome to certifie the People what was done, and bring the Heads to them. When the Knights were entered the City, carying before them on the points of their Lances, the Heads of their arch-enemies; the generall gladnesse and Iubilee of the City was so ineffable, as no Oratory can expresse it. Old and young ran all to the Altars and Temples to giue thanks to the gods, not one stayed at home. In an extasie of ioy they congratulated one another, clustring together into the ^{*} Cirque, as at some great solemnity. *Albinus* (the Emperor) sacrificed ^{*} Hecatombes: and all the Magistrates, Nobles and Peeres infinitely reioyced, that the Axe which threatned to behead them, had lost his owne.

Presently were Posts and Heralds (with Laurell-branches) dispatched to all the Prouinces. While Rome kept Holiday, *Maximus* went from Rauenna to Aquileia, hauing passed ouer the Marishes where ^{*} *Eridanus* and the neighbour Ri-

A Iubilee at Rome.

* Or Horse-race-yard, able to hold about 100000.
* Hundred of Beeces.

* Vid Plin. Hist.
l. 3. c. 16.

uers meet, and empty themselves into the Sea by seven Channels, w^{ch} *Marghes* are therefore called by the Natiues, the seven Seas. The Aquileians presently opened their Gates to *Maximus*, and all the Cities of Italy sent Embassadours of their prime Citizens in white Vestures and Laurels in their hands, which brought with them the Images of their Tutelar gods, & al the Crownes of Masse gold, that were found among the Donaries. Thus they congratulated *Maximus* & heaped green *leaves vpon him. The Army also which had beleagerd Aquileia, met him wth Laurels (like Men of Peace) not out of hearty affection, but in counterfeit submission and necessary accommodation to the present fortune of the State: for most of them repined, and were inwardly vexed that they had lost him which was of their owne Choyce, and that they succeeded whom the Senate elected.

Maximus hauing spent two daies at Aquileia in solemne Sacrifices, assembled all the Army into the Field the third day, and thus

A Tryumphant
Embassage.

* *palme*.
A Romane
Ceremony.

thus spake to them, sitting in his Throne.

Maximus his Speech to the Army.

YOU now find by experience how beneficiall it is, to submit your selues and take part with the Romanes: for now you enioy the Commodities of Peace for the extremities of Warre, and preserue inuiolate your Military Oath made to the Gods (the sacred Mystery of the Romane State.) And long may you enioy these high benefits, continuing in Obedience to the People and Senate of Rome, and to vs the Emperours whom they haue elected and adiudged to this Dignity, for our Noble Birth, Atchieuements, and Honourable Descent: For the Empire is not the priuate Patrimoniall Right of any one man,

N n n 3 but

but belongs (in common) to the Roman Peeres and Commons. That City is indeed the Empresse; and We (together with you) are onely Administrators of the Empire. If you therefore containe your selues (as Liegemen) in good Order and Discipline, and yeeld due Honour and Allegiance to your Soueraigne, you shall enioy a happy and flourishing Estate, and all the Prouinces and Cities will (by your Example) line in Peace and Obedience to their Rulers; you shall euery man hence forth dwell at home (to your owne contentment) and not be prest any more, to hazard your liues in remote Regions. As for the Barbarian Prouinces, it shall bee Our care to keepe them in Quiet; For being two Emperors, we shall

shall with ease dispatch all domesticke and forraigne Affaires, and be ready to aide one another vpon all Occasions. Nor let any of you imagine that any Vindictiue Resolution is harbour'd against you, either by vs or the Romanes, or any other Nation formerly offended by you. Wee all know you did but as you were commanded. Let all then which is past be buried in obliuion; and let a firme League of euerlasting Amity be concluded amongst vs.

Maximus hauing thus said, promised them a Royall Donatiue: and after a few daies spent in Aquileia, determin'd to take his Iourney to Rome. Dismissing therefore the rest of the Army into the Prouinces, and their seuerall stations, he takes his way to Rome, attended with the Pike-men of the Imperiall Guard, and the Souldiers

diers w^{ch} had serued vnder *Albinus*. There returned also the Germane Auxiliaries, in whose loyalty he most reposed, hauing ruled that Prouince (when he was a priuate man) with great moderation. At his entry into Rome, hee was met by *Albinus* (accompanied with *Gordian Caesar*, the Nobles and Commons welcoming him with great Ioy and Triumphant acclamations. Thus for a while was the State gouerned with excellent Order and Grauitie, to the generall reioycement of all sorts; the People glorying in them, and highly honouring so Noble and Worthy Emperours. But the souldiers cankered hearts, stomacked the Peoples applause, and held it for a great Griouance, that they were so nobly descended, especially that they were elected by the Senate. The Germanes also which *Maximus* retained with him in the City, were an eie-fore to them; for they mis-doubted they were kept there to bridle and confront their Outrages: and they feared also lest being cashiered and degraded by some such traine

as

as were *Pertinax* his Murtherers by *Seuerus*, they should bee put in their places. Wherefore at the Capitoline * Solemnitie, while all were intentiue to the Pageants and Festiuall Spectacles, the Souldiers discouered their secret Rancor. For being set vpon Mischiefe, they ran in a Bedlam * Rage to the Palace, to surprise the old Emperours. Now it happened that the Princes agreed not wel together, but each stroue for Superiority (so insatiate is the Desire of Soueraignty, and so incompatible a thing is MAIESTIE.) For *Albinus* thought hee should haue the pre-eminence, for his Noble Birth, and double Consulship; and *Maximus* thought he deserved it, for his Prouostship of the City, and Dexterity in State-Affaires. Both had sufficient Ground of Honourable Descent, and Natiue Splendor, to aspire to Monarchy. Which Ambition was the chiefe Cause of both their Ruines. For *Maximus* hearing that the Prætorians were come to murther them, would haue sent presently for the Germane Regi-

O o o

ments,

* Playes sacred to Ioue, and yearly celebrated for Deliu-
erance of the Capitol from the Gauls.

* ὁρμή δ' ἀλό-
γω
Maximus and
Albinus Disen-
sion.

ments, (in the City) who were able to haue matcht the Traitors. But *Albinus* knowing how deuoted the Germans wereto *Maximus*, suspected it was a Plot against himselfe, and therefore would not suffer it; alledging that there was no intent for their comming to repress the Prætorians, but to suppress him, and inuest *Maximus* in the Soueraigntie. During this imparlance, all the Souldiers rusht into the Court, where (the Porters and Chamber-keepers giuing way) they laid hold on both the old Men, and casting the Clothes from their Backes (which were such ordinary Apparell as they wore within doores) they haled them naked out of the Royall Palace. Then fell they to beat them in most shamefull and approbrious sort, terming them in scorne *Senatorian Emperours*, tearing their Beards and Eye-browes, And abusing them in euery part of their Body. Thus they hurried them through the midst of the City to their Campe, for they intended not to kill them in the Court, but

They are stripes.

Beaten,

but to torture them (aloue) that they might be more sensible of their pained. Howbeit the Prætorians vnderstanding that the Germanes had taken Armes, and were marching aaine to rescue them, they cut the Emperors Throates (after they had baffal'd them with all kinde of Villany) and threw their Corps into the highway. Then held they up in * their hands *Gordian Cesar*, and (hauing no other in present) saluted him Emperor, crying out to the People, that they had but slaine them, whom themselves first reiected: and had elected *Gordian*, Nephew to him whom the Romanes compelled to be Emperor. Then taking him with them they retired to their Campe, where they lockt the Gates, and were quiet.

And murdered.

* Of this Ceremony, Vid. Pet. Pithæ: Aduersar. l. 2. c. 6.

The Germanes hearing that they were Massacred, whom they hasted to rescue, holding it bootlesse to fight for dead men; returned to their * Hostelry. This wretched and disastrous End had those Sacred and Glorious Sages, whom their Noble Linage and Illustrious Merits

* Hostelry.